## Rational trigonometry of a tetrahedron over a general metrical framework

## Author:

Notowidigdo, Gennady

## Publication Date:

2018

## DOI:

https://doi.org/10.26190/unsworks/20973

## License:

https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/3.0/au/
Link to license to see what you are allowed to do with this resource.
Downloaded from http://hdl.handle.net/1959.4/61277 in https://
unsworks.unsw.edu.au on 2024-04-29

# Rational trigonometry of a tetrahedron over a general metrical framework 

This thesis is presented to the<br>School of Mathematics and Statistics<br>and the<br>Faculty of Science<br>at the<br>University of New South Wales, Sydney,

and fulfils the requirements of the degree
Doctor of Philosophy.

Submitted by: Gennady Arshad Notowidigdo

Supervisor: Prof. N. J. Wildberger

Australia's

## Surname/Family Name

Given Name/s
Abbreviation for degree as give in the University calendar
Faculty
School
Thesis Title $\qquad$

# Thesis/Dissertation Sheet 

NOTOWIDIGDO GENNADY ARSHAD<br>PhD<br>SCIENCE<br>MATHEMATICS \& STATISTICS<br>Rational trigonometry of a tetrahedron over a general metrical framework

## Abstract 350 words maximum: (PLEASE TYPE)

This thesis sets up a framework for rational trigonometry in three dimensions, using a linear algebraic approach to extend the classical trigonometric framework of years past, as well as the two-dimensional rational trigonometric framework of Wildberger, beyond the usual Euclidean setting to arbitrary symmetric bilinear forms and arbitrary fields not of characteristic 2 . We will use two complementary techniques to establish such a framework.

In addition to a generalised scalar product which is defined by a symmetric bilinear form, we define a generalised vector product. Furthermore, we derive analogs of classical results attributed to Lagrange, Cauchy and Binet, and use these to establish formulas for the quadrances, quadreas, quadrume, spreads, dihedral spreads, solid spreads and dual solid spreads of a general tetrahedron. While we aim to generalise and prove previously stated formulas of Wildberger, as well as classical formulas attributed to Richardson, we also establish new results such as the Three-dimensional quadrea theorem and the Quadrume theorem.

The other technique is to introduce standard co-ordinates, where affine transformations are used to transform to a particularly simple example, and all the complexity resides in the algebraic expression for the symmetric bilinear form rather than the generality of the tetrahedron itself. Using this technique, we derive the Tetrahedron cross law and the Dihedral cross relation.

Throughout this thesis, we use a simple example from Khafre's pyramid to illustrate the ideas we have formulated, and in the final chapter we examine the special cases of the regular, isosceles and trirectangular tetrahedral, as well as a general tetrahedron in a relativistic setting and a general tetrahedron over a finite field.

[^0][^1]
## ORIGINALITY STATEMENT

'I hereby declare that this submission is my own work and to the best of my knowledge it contains no materials previously published or written by another person, or substantial proportions of material which have been accepted for the award of any other degree or diploma at UNSW or any other educational institution, except where due acknowledgement is made in the thesis. Any contribution made to the research by others, with whom I have worked at UNSW or elsewhere, is explicitly acknowledged in the thesis. I also declare that the intellectual content of this thesis is the product of my own work, except to the extent that assistance from others in the project's design and conception or in style, presentation and linguistic expression is acknowledged.'

Signed $\qquad$

Date $\qquad$

## COPYRIGHT STATEMENT

I hereby grant the University of New South Wales or its agents the right to archive and to make available my thesis or dissertation in whole or part in the University libraries in all forms of media, now or here after known, subject to the provisions of the Copyright Act 1968. I retain all proprietary rights, such as patent rights. I also retain the right to use in future works (such as articles or books) all or part of this thesis or dissertation.
I also authorise University Microfilms to use the 350 word abstract of my thesis in Dissertation Abstract International (this is applicable to doctoral theses only).
I have either used no substantial portions of copyright material in my thesis or I have obtained permission to use copyright material; where permission has not been granted I have applied/will apply for a partial restriction of the digital copy of my thesis or dissertation.'

Signed $\qquad$

Date

## AUTHENTICITY STATEMENT

II certify that the Library deposit digital copy is a direct equivalent of the final officially approved version of my thesis. No emendation of content has occurred and if there are any minor variations in formatting, they are the result of the conversion to digital format.'

Signed $\qquad$

Date

UNSW is supportive of candidates publishing their research results during their candidature as detailed in the UNSW Thesis Examination Procedure.

## Publications can be used in their thesis in lieu of a Chapter if:

- The student contributed greater than $50 \%$ of the content in the publication and is the "primary author", ie. the student was responsible primarily for the planning, execution and preparation of the work for publication
- The student has approval to include the publication in their thesis in lieu of a Chapter from their supervisor and Postgraduate Coordinator.
- The publication is not subject to any obligations or contractual agreements with a third party that would constrain its inclusion in the thesis

Please indicate whether this thesis contains published material or not.
This thesis contains no publications, either published or submitted for publication (if this box is checked, you may delete all the material on page 2)

Some of the work described in this thesis has been published and it has been documented in the relevant Chapters with acknowledgement (if this box is checked, you may delete all the material on page 2)

$\square$This thesis has publications (either published or submitted for publication) incorporated into it in lieu of a chapter and the details are presented below

## CANDIDATE'S DECLARATION

I declare that:

- I have complied with the Thesis Examination Procedure
- where I have used a publication in lieu of a Chapter, the listed publication(s) below meet(s) the requirements to be included in the thesis.

| Name | Signature | Date (dd/mm/yy) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

## Postgraduate Coordinator's Declaration (to be filled in where publications are used in lieu of Chapters)

I declare that:

- the information below is accurate
- where listed publication(s) have been used in lieu of Chapter(s), their use complies with the Thesis Examination Procedure
- the minimum requirements for the format of the thesis have been met.

| PGC's Name | PGC's Signature | Date (dd/mm/yy) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

## Contents

Acknowledgments ..... i
Preface ..... iii
Introduction ..... v
1 Rational trigonometry in three dimensions ..... 1
1.1 Symmetric bilinear form on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ ..... 3
1.2 The vector product in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ ..... 4
1.3 Results from generalised vector geometry ..... 7
1.4 Geometric objects in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ ..... 14
1.5 Projective geometry ..... 17
1.5.1 Projective points, lines and triangles ..... 17
1.5.2 Symmetric bilinear form, perpendicularity and duality ..... 19
1.6 Rational trigonometric quantities ..... 21
1.6.1 Affine rational trigonometry ..... 21
1.6.2 Elementary results from affine rational trigonometry ..... 26
1.6.3 Projective rational trigonometry ..... 31
1.6.4 Elementary results from projective rational trigonometry ..... 32
2 Trigonometry of the tetrahedron ..... 41
2.1 The Khafre Tetrahedron ..... 41
2.2 The dihedral, solid and dual solid spreads ..... 44
2.2.1 Dihedral spreads ..... 45
2.2.2 Solid spreads ..... 47
2.2.3 Dual solid spreads ..... 50
2.3 Ratio theorems of a general tetrahedron ..... 53
2.4 Skew quadrances of a tetrahedron ..... 55
3 The Standard tetrahedron and its applications ..... 61
3.1 Trigonometric quantities of the Standard tetrahedron ..... 63
3.2 Tetrahedron cross law ..... 68
3.3 Dihedral cross relation ..... 71
4 Special tetrahedra and their properties ..... 75
4.1 Regular tetrahedron ..... 76
4.2 Isosceles tetrahedron (Disphenoid) ..... 79
4.3 Trirectangular tetrahedron ..... 83
4.4 A relativistic example ..... 88
4.5 An example over $\mathbb{F}_{11}$ ..... 92
Afterword ..... 97

## List of Figures

1 Triangle with distances and angles displayed ..... v
1.1 Line $A_{1} A_{2}$ ..... 14
1.2 Plane $A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}$ ..... 15
1.3 Triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ ..... 15
1.4 Tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ ..... 16
1.5 Tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ ..... 19
1.6 $B$-dual tripod $\overline{q_{1} q_{2} q_{3}}$ of tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ ..... 20
1.7 A triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}$, and $B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ displayed ..... 27
1.8 Tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}$, and $B$-projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$ displayed ..... 32
2.1 The Khafre pyramid at Giza [32] ..... 42
2.2 Geometry of the Khafre pyramid and tetrahedron with rescaled lengths ..... 42
2.3 Quadrances of the Khafre tetrahedron ..... 43
$2.4 B$-quadrances of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ ..... 44
$2.5 B$-dihedral spreads of tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ ..... 45
2.6 Dihedral spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron ..... 47
$2.7 B$-solid spreads of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ ..... 48
2.8 Solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron ..... 50
$2.9 B$-dual solid spreads of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ ..... 50
2.10 Dual solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron ..... 53
$2.11 B$-skew quadrances of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ ..... 58
2.12 Skew quadrances of Khafre tetrahedron ..... 59
3.1 An affine map from $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$ ..... 61
4.1 Regular tetrahedron ..... 76
4.2 Isosceles tetrahedron (disphenoid) ..... 79
4.3 Trirectangular tetrahedron $B$-perpendicular at $A_{0}$ ..... 84

## Acknowledgments

I would like to first thank my family for their support in making sure that this thesis is submitted. My mother, Gambira Dasawati Moran, has been so influential in making sure that I stay disciplined enough and committed to complete this thesis and, ultimately, the doctoral degree in general; through the good times and the bad times, my mother was always there for moral support. In addition to my mother, my brothers Garindra Fadli Notowidigdo and Gifari Rayhan Notowidigdo have helped me to stay focused on my work and research. The support from my family have been crucial to my success with this thesis and I am qualified to say that this thesis is dedicated to them.

This thesis would not have been submitted were it not also for the constant support and assistance that I have received from my supervisor Norman John Wildberger. He is not only the primary influencer of the research that I have been doing here at UNSW Sydney, but also my largest source of moral and professional support in the university. It has been a pleasure to work with him on this research for the past three and a half years and I hope that this thesis is a reflection of my appreciation for everything he has done for me throughout my tenure.

## Preface

In 2005, Wildberger introduced the field of rational trigonometry in [59]. In it, he presents a purely algebraic approach to the subject of trigonometry, which is currently reliant on the classical notion of circular functions and square roots, whose precise definitions involve infinite processes which are computationally approximate in nature. By framing the study of trigonometry in the realm of rational numbers, calculations with regards to the triangle are computationally exact and we obtain a much more general form of geometry that extends to arbitrary fields not of characteristic 2 (to avoid zero denominators) and to other types of geometries, which are parameterised by an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form.

We will extend the rational or algebraic study of geometry and trigonometry in two dimensions introduced by Wildberger in [55] and [59] to three dimensions. We will use the tools of linear algebra to formulate two complementary approaches by which to study general tetrahedra. One approach involves a generalised vector product, so that we can define the trigonometric quantities of the tetrahedron and formulate some results pertaining to it. The other approach involves an affine map from a general tetrahedron to a specific tetrahedron, so that we may study a specific tetrahedron over a general symmetric bilinear form as opposed to a general tetrahedron over a specific bilinear form.

## Introduction

To provide motivation for this thesis, we summarise briefly the standard approach to trigonometry, which involves considering a general triangle in the Euclidean 2-space $\mathbb{E}^{2}$ typically over the "real number field", denoted by $\mathbb{R}$. The points $A_{0}, A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ of this triangle, as well as the corresponding distances and angles, are denoted and illustrated in Figure 1.


Figure 1: Triangle with distances and angles displayed

In what follows, we may suppose that the angles $\theta_{0}, \theta_{1}$ and $\theta_{2}$ are measured in radians. Given these quantities, the following results are standard:

1. The sum of the angles is equal to two right angles (Proposition 13, Book I of Elements [26]), i.e.

$$
\theta_{0}+\theta_{1}+\theta_{2}=\pi .
$$

2. Pythagoras' theorem (Proposition 48, Book I of Elements) - We have that $\theta_{0}=\frac{\pi}{2}$ precisely when

$$
d_{0}^{2}=d_{1}^{2}+d_{2}^{2}
$$

3. Cosine law - We have that

$$
d_{0}^{2}=d_{1}^{2}+d_{2}^{2}-2 d_{1} d_{2} \cos \theta_{0},
$$

$$
d_{1}^{2}=d_{0}^{2}+d_{2}^{2}-2 d_{0} d_{2} \cos \theta_{1},
$$

and

$$
d_{2}^{2}=d_{0}^{2}+d_{1}^{2}-2 d_{0} d_{1} \cos \theta_{2} .
$$

4. Sine law - We have that

$$
\frac{\sin \theta_{0}}{d_{0}}=\frac{\sin \theta_{1}}{d_{1}}=\frac{\sin \theta_{2}}{d_{2}} .
$$

In co-ordinate geometry, the distances $d_{0}, d_{1}$ and $d_{2}$ are obtained by taking the square root of the sum of squares of the co-ordinate differences; here, we assume the Cartesian plane and all its associated properties. As for the angles $\theta_{0}, \theta_{1}$ and $\theta_{2}$, we draw an arc of radius 1 centred at the intersection of the two sides and thus compute the arclength, which typically requires methods from calculus. This methodology presents various difficulties, so working classically in trigonometry has its limitations. Over arbitrary fields not of characteristic 2, especially in finite fields, not all numbers have square roots. As an example, in the field of 11 elements (denoted by $\mathbb{F}_{11}$ and typically consisting of integers from -5 to 5 ) we have that the only squares in $\mathbb{F}_{11}$ are $-2,0,1,3,4$ and 5 ; the other five elements of $\mathbb{F}_{11}$ do not have square roots. Thus, the current framework of classical trigonometry is generally restricted to the "real number field" and the formulas do not generalise easily to other fields. Additional difficulties include:

- the reliance of approximations in the calculations of square roots and arclengths;
- the reliance of extensive tables to calculate only some of the trigonometric values;
- the implicit reliance on differential calculus for the definition of angles and circular functions, as well as their inverses;
- the complexity associated with teaching this content to students; and
- inherent difficulties with angles, with particular emphasis on moving to three dimensions and possibly higher.

The story does not improve by much with the use of vectors. We introduce the Euclidean scalar product [48, p. 16] and take its square root to obtain the distance. As for angles, if $\|v\| \equiv \sqrt{v \cdot v}$ then we can use

$$
v \cdot w=\|v\|\|w\| \cos \theta
$$

to introduce angles. Setting

$$
x \equiv \frac{v \cdot w}{\|v\|\|w\|},
$$

the Maclaurin series [52] of $\arcsin x$, for $|x| \leq 1$, is

$$
\arcsin x=\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(2 n)!}{4^{n}(n!)^{2}(2 n+1)} x^{2 n+1}=x+\frac{x^{3}}{6}+\frac{3 x^{5}}{40}+\cdots
$$

and then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\theta & =\arccos x=\frac{\pi}{2}-\arcsin x \\
& =\frac{\pi}{2}-\left(x+\frac{x^{3}}{6}+\frac{3 x^{5}}{40}+\cdots\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

We note the unending/non-terminating aspect of the Maclaurin series, with relation to our desire to obtain exact computations.

In the framework of spherical geometry, as laid out classically in Moritz [42], we have analogous formulas with similar computational limitations. Given a spherical triangle with spherical distances $a, b$ and $c$, and respective opposite spherical angles $A, B$ and $C$, the Spherical sine law is

$$
\frac{\sin A}{\sin a}=\frac{\sin B}{\sin b}=\frac{\sin C}{\sin c}
$$

and the Spherical cosine law is given by the set of relations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \cos a=\cos b \cos c+\sin b \sin c \cos A \\
& \cos b=\cos a \cos c+\sin a \sin c \cos B
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\cos c=\cos a \cos b+\sin a \sin b \cos C .
$$

We also have a second family of Spherical cosine laws, given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \cos A=\cos B \cos C-\sin B \sin C \cos a \\
& \cos B=\cos A \cos C-\sin A \sin C \cos b
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\cos C=\cos A \cos B-\sin A \sin B \cos c
$$

As a replacement for distances and angles, the notions of quadrance and spread are introduced in [55] and [59, Chap. 5 and 6], for the two-dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{E}^{2}$ over the rational number field, equipped with the usual definition of Euclidean scalar product. Given two points $A_{1} \equiv\left[x_{1}, y_{1}\right]$ and $A_{2} \equiv\left[x_{2}, y_{2}\right]$, the quadrance between them is the number

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right) & \equiv\left(x_{2}-x_{1}\right)^{2}+\left(y_{2}-y_{1}\right)^{2} \\
& =\left(x_{2}-x_{1}, y_{2}-y_{1}\right) \cdot\left(x_{2}-x_{1}, y_{2}-y_{1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Furthermore, if we have two lines $l_{1}$ and $l_{2}$ with respective direction vectors $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right)$
and $v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}\right)$, then the spread between them is the number

$$
s\left(l_{1}, l_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(x_{1} x_{2}+y_{1} y_{2}\right)^{2}}{\left(x_{1}^{2}+x_{2}^{2}\right)\left(y_{1}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right)}=\frac{\left(x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}\right)^{2}}{\left(x_{1}^{2}+x_{2}^{2}\right)\left(y_{1}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right)}
$$

The last equality goes back to a result of Diophantus, as well as Brahmagupta and Fibonacci; the history of this is highlighted in Stillwell [50, pp. 72-76].

We can interpret the notions of quadrance and spread classically as the squared distance and the square of the sine of an angle, respectively. Working rationally does not limit us to the trigonometric identities, which inputs angles, and will allow us to expand our current framework beyond Euclidean geometry naturally.

Motivated by the study of a triangle in two-dimensional Euclidean (affine) geometry from Elements and its rational reformulations in [59], this thesis extends the framework of the latter to the three-dimensional affine space, which we will denote by $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, over an arbitrary field $\mathbb{F}$ not of characteristic 2 . We will associate to $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ the vector space $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, which will be equipped with a general symmetric bilinear form, so that the current framework is extended beyond Euclidean geometry. Here, the usual notions of points and vectors are given to us. The focus of this thesis is to understand the fundamental object in threedimensional geometry: a general tetrahedron. We do this in a way that will prepare us for higher-dimensional generalisations. We build on Altshiller-Court [1] and Richardson [45] on the classical trigonometry of a tetrahedron to provide an introductory framework for the rational trigonometry of a general tetrahedron in the generalised affine and vector spaces.

We first introduce some elementary concepts in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ before defining a symmetric bilinear form on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, which generalises the Euclidean scalar product. This gives us a generalised metrical framework by which the matrix representing the symmetric bilinear form becomes an important factor in our calculations. In addition to this, we generalise the Euclidean vector product based on this symmetric bilinear form and link it with matrix adjugation. With the generalised scalar and vector products, we define the scalar and vector triple and quadruple products, and draw inspiration from Spiegel's manual [48, p. 16] to present easier, indirect methods of calculating them.

In addition to points, we also have lines and planes in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, as well as triangles and tetrahedra in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ and various other objects associated to them. From here, we are able to build on the notions of quadrance and spread to define the quadrea and quadrume, as well as the dihedral spread, solid spread and dual solid spread. As an example, we can start with a tetrahedron with points $A_{0}, A_{1}, A_{2}$ and $A_{3}$ and define the quadrances of the tetrahedron to be $Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{03}, Q_{12}, Q_{13}$ and $Q_{23}$, where for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$

$$
Q_{i j} \equiv Q\left(A_{i}, A_{j}\right)
$$

Based on this, the quadreas and quadrume of this tetrahedron can be expressed in terms
of the quadrances as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{A}_{012} \equiv\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}+Q_{12}\right)^{2}-2\left(Q_{01}^{2}+Q_{02}^{2}+Q_{12}^{2}\right), \\
& \mathcal{A}_{013} \equiv\left(Q_{01}+Q_{03}+Q_{13}\right)^{2}-2\left(Q_{01}^{2}+Q_{03}^{2}+Q_{13}^{2}\right), \\
& \mathcal{A}_{023} \equiv\left(Q_{02}+Q_{03}+Q_{23}\right)^{2}-2\left(Q_{02}^{2}+Q_{03}^{2}+Q_{23}^{2}\right), \\
& \mathcal{A}_{123} \equiv\left(Q_{12}+Q_{13}+Q_{23}\right)^{2}-2\left(Q_{12}^{2}+Q_{13}^{2}+Q_{23}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{V} \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
2 Q_{01} & Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12} & Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13} \\
Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12} & 2 Q_{02} & Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23} \\
Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13} & Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23} & 2 Q_{03}
\end{array}\right|
$$

For $0 \leq j<k \leq 3$ with $j$ and $k$ distinct from $i$, let $s_{i ; j k}$ be the spread between the lines through the pairs of points $\left(A_{i}, A_{j}\right)$ and ( $A_{i}, A_{l}$ ). Then, the spread can be expressed in terms of the quadrances and quadreas as

$$
s_{i ; j k}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{i j k}}{4 Q_{i j} Q_{i k}} .
$$

Based on the results of a seminar by Wildberger [63], the dihedral spreads and solid spreads of this tetrahedron can be expressed in terms of the quadrances, quadreas and quadrume as

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{01}=\frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}, \quad E_{02}=\frac{4 Q_{02} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023}}, \quad E_{03}=\frac{4 Q_{03} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}}, \\
E_{23}=\frac{4 Q_{23} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}}, \quad E_{13}=\frac{4 Q_{13} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}}, \quad E_{12}=\frac{4 Q_{12} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{123}}, \\
\mathcal{S}_{0}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{1}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{12} Q_{13}}, \\
\mathcal{S}_{2}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{02} Q_{12} Q_{23}} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{03} Q_{13} Q_{23}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Based on this, we can define $C_{i j} \equiv 1-E_{i j}$ to be the dihedral crosses of this tetrahedron, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$. On a similar note, we can express the dual solid spread in terms of the quadrances and quadrume as

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}}, \quad \mathcal{D}_{1}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}}, \\
\mathcal{D}_{2}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

These will be important quantities that we associate to a general tetrahedron in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, and a significant part of our discussion will involve justifying the expressions for the latter three quantities. We will also link them to various quantities from projective geometry and trigonometry, which Wildberger has framed in the rational sense in [55], [60], [61], [64], [65]
and [66]; the general framework will be reviewed in the thesis.
Throughout the latter parts of the thesis, we refer to a specific tetrahedron and use it as a running example for these results. This tetrahedron is based on the second of three pyramids in Giza, Egypt, which houses the tomb of Khafre and is located in front of the famous Great Sphinx.

Of independent but special interest, we make the observation that a pair of lines of a tetrahedron passing through a distinct pair of two points are skew, i.e. they are non-parallel and non-intersecting lines. This motivates us to compute the quadrance between such pairs of lines and uncover a connection with a rational version of a result of Bretschneider [6], which is also illustrated in Coolidge [15]. In the classical framework, Bretschneider's result computes the area of a general quadrangle (a collection of four coplanar points) based on the distance between any two points of it. We also present two results which express the equality of ratios of certain trigonometric quantities, based on the results from Richardson [45].

As an additional technology that can be used to simplify some calculations, we can consider an affine map which sends a general tetrahedron in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ to a unique tetrahedron $\overline{B_{0} B_{1} B_{2} B_{3}}$, where

$$
B_{0} \equiv[0,0,0], \quad B_{1} \equiv[1,0,0], \quad B_{2} \equiv[0,1,0] \quad \text { and } \quad B_{3} \equiv[0,0,1] .
$$

Inspired by the contents of Nguyen Le's doctoral thesis [35] and her joint paper with Wildberger [36], we will name this tetrahedron the Standard tetrahedron and this will form the content of Chapter 3. We will use the trigonometric quantities of the Standard tetrahedron to prove more complex results at the cost of a brute force approach. Motivated by Richardson [45] and Lee [37], we introduce rational analogs to two substantial results, which we will call the Tetrahedron cross law and the Dihedral cross relation. In the former result, we involve the dihedral crosses to find a relationship between the quadreas of the four faces of a tetrahedron; in the latter result, we see that the six dihedral crosses will satisfy a relation involving a very large polynomial.

Based on the expressions for the trigonometric quantities above, the Tetrahedron cross law takes the form

$$
\left.\left.\begin{array}{rl} 
& {\left[\left[\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)^{2}\right]\right.} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right]=\mathcal{A}^{2}\right)
$$

Furthermore, define

$$
\begin{gathered}
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}, \quad Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}, \quad Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}, \\
x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12},
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}, \\
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z), \\
R \equiv P+z-Z, \quad S \equiv P+y-Y, \quad T \equiv P+x-X, \\
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right) .
$$

Then, the Dihedral cross relation takes the form

$$
V^{2}=X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right) .
$$

To end the thesis, we apply the results of the previous chapters to some examples of special tetrahedra in the final chapter. We start with three particular tetrahedra:

- regular tetrahedron - here, the quadrances between any two points of the tetrahedron are all equal.
- isosceles tetrahedron or disphenoid - this is a tetrahedron where opposite edges (pairs of edges of a tetrahedron with no common points) have equal quadrances.
- trirectangular tetrahedron - a tetrahedron where the edges/vectors emanating from a point are mutually perpendicular with respect to the arbitrary symmetric bilinear form.

In addition to these three special tetrahedra, we will consider two further tetrahedra. In one case, we will examine an example tetrahedron in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ over the rational number field where we equip a relativistic bilinear form based on a two-dimensional analog mentioned by Wildberger in [56], [57] and [58], which is related to the Minkowski scalar product [40]. In the other case, we will examine another tetrahedron in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, but over the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{11}$ with 11 elements, which will be expressed as integers between -5 and 5 .

It is a measure of the generality of the rational trigonometric formulation that we are able to extend our study even to such non-standard situations. We will end the thesis with some remarks on further directions.

## Chapter 1

## Rational trigonometry in three dimensions

We start by considering three-dimensional affine space, denoted by $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, over a general (number) field $\mathbb{F}$ not of characteristic 2. Points are algebraically expressed as a triple enclosed in square brackets, e.g. $A=[x, y, z]$. Two points $A_{1} \equiv\left[x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right]$ and $A_{2} \equiv$ $\left[x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right]$ are equal precisely when

$$
x_{1}=x_{2}, \quad y_{1}=y_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad z_{1}=z_{2}
$$

If $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are not equal, then they are distinct. We can also talk about multiple points being distinct if any two are distinct.

Noting that points may represent (absolute) positions in space if co-ordinate axes have been specified, we will also want to consider relative displacements between points. If $A_{1} \equiv\left[x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right]$ and $A_{2} \equiv\left[x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right]$, then we define the associated (displacement) vector

$$
\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}} \equiv\left(x_{2}-x_{1}, y_{2}-y_{1}, z_{2}-z_{1}\right)
$$

Two vectors $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right)$ and $v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)$ are equal precisely when

$$
x_{1}=x_{2}, \quad y_{1}=y_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad z_{1}=z_{2} .
$$

The (displacement) vector $v=\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}$ is the zero vector $\mathbf{0} \equiv(0,0,0)$ precisely when $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are equal.

We also follow some non-standard conventions introduced by Wildberger in his YouTube playlist [68]. Namely, we will write the following operation on two points:

$$
A_{2}-A_{1} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}
$$

Note that we are not introducing a general linear algebraic structure on points here; only the difference of points is defined, not their sum. In conjunction with this, if $A \equiv[x, y, z]$
is a point and $v \equiv(a, b, c)$ is a vector, then we define the sum $A+v$ to be the point

$$
A+v=[x, y, z]+(a, b, c) \equiv[x+a, y+b, z+c] .
$$

Thus $A+v=B$ is equivalent to $v=\overrightarrow{A B}$. Note that we will require that the point $A$ be written on the left, and the vector $v$ be written on the right, so that $v+A$ has no meaning for us.

It now makes sense to consider expressions of the form $\left(A+v_{1}\right)+v_{2}$ and to define addition on two vectors $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ by the requirement that

$$
\left(A+v_{1}\right)+v_{2}=A+\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right) .
$$

Clearly this is equivalent to the rule that

$$
\left(a_{1}, b_{1}, c_{1}\right)+\left(a_{2}, b_{2}, c_{2}\right)=\left(a_{1}+a_{2}, b_{1}+b_{2}, c_{1}+c_{2}\right) .
$$

Consistent with this, we define for any non-zero $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ the scalar multiple of a vector $v \equiv(a, b, c)$ by

$$
\lambda v=\lambda(a, b, c) \equiv(\lambda a, \lambda b, \lambda c) .
$$

This allows us to obtain and define our usual three-dimensional vector (or linear) space associated with $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ over $\mathbb{F}$, which we will denote by $\mathbb{V}^{3}$. We will identify vectors with $1 \times n$ matrices so that the usual apparatus of matrices and linear maps present in linear algebra may be applied to vectors.

Throughout the thesis, we will also apply the Zero denominator convention from [59, p. 28], which states that a statement involving fractions and rational functions is assumed to be empty if its denominator is zero.

We define the signed volume of three ordered vectors $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right), v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)$ and $v_{3} \equiv\left(x_{3}, y_{3}, z_{3}\right)$ to be the number
$v\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right) \equiv \frac{1}{6} \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}x_{1} & y_{1} & z_{1} \\ x_{2} & y_{2} & z_{2} \\ x_{3} & y_{3} & z_{3}\end{array}\right)=\frac{x_{1} y_{2} z_{3}-x_{1} y_{3} z_{2}-x_{2} y_{1} z_{3}+x_{2} y_{3} z_{1}+x_{3} y_{1} z_{2}-x_{3} y_{2} z_{1}}{6}$.
Note that this quantity is an element of $\mathbb{F}$; as 2 and 3 are factors of 6 , fields of characteristics 3 will also be excluded from the discussion of signed volumes.

If $w \equiv w_{1}+w_{2}$, for $w_{1}, w_{2} \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$, then we have that

$$
v\left(w, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)=v\left(w_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)+v\left(w_{2}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)
$$

and for some non-zero $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ we also have that

$$
v\left(\lambda v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)=\lambda v\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right) .
$$

These properties will hold with the other inputs, as the signed volume is a trilinear operation. Moreover,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& v\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)=v\left(v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{1}\right)=v\left(v_{3}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right) \\
= & -v\left(v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{2}\right)=-v\left(v_{2}, v_{1}, v_{3}\right)=-v\left(v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 1.1 Symmetric bilinear form on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$

Suppose that we are given a $3 \times 3$ symmetric matrix

$$
B \equiv\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

This matrix determines a symmetric bilinear form [39, p. 1-2] on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ defined by

$$
v \cdot{ }_{B} w \equiv v B w^{T} .
$$

We will also say that the matrix $B$ represents the symmetric bilinear form defined above. We will call such an operation the $B$-scalar product. This is a concept used extensively in [55] and also by Le [35] to extend the framework of rational trigonometry to more general metrical situations. When $B$ is the $3 \times 3$ identity matrix, the $B$-scalar product corresponds to the usual notion of the Euclidean scalar product, which we simply write as $v \cdot w$.

The symmetric bilinear form also gives us a $B$-quadratic form

$$
Q_{B}(v) \equiv v \cdot{ }_{B} v
$$

For vectors $v$ and $w$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ and a non-zero $\lambda$ in $\mathbb{F}$, we have the property

$$
Q_{B}(\lambda v)=\lambda^{2} Q_{B}(v),
$$

as well as

$$
Q_{B}(v+w)=Q_{B}(v)+Q_{B}(w)+2\left(v \cdot_{B} w\right)
$$

and

$$
Q_{B}(v-w)=Q_{B}(v)+Q_{B}(w)-2\left(v \cdot{ }_{B} w\right) .
$$

Hence, we can express the $B$-scalar product between two vectors $v, w \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$ in terms of the $B$-quadratic form as

$$
v \cdot_{B} w=\frac{Q_{B}(v+w)-Q_{B}(v)-Q_{B}(w)}{2}=\frac{Q_{B}(v)+Q_{B}(w)-Q_{B}(v-w)}{2} .
$$

Consistent with the terminology of Havlicek and Weiß [25], the $B$-scalar product is then
the polar form of the $B$-quadratic form, and the above relation will thus be called the polarisation formula.

The symmetric bilinear form on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ represented by the matrix $B$ is non-degenerate if, for any vector $v \in \mathbb{V}^{3}, v \cdot{ }_{B} w=0$ implies that $w=0$. This will be true precisely when $B$ is invertible. We will assume this throughout the thesis unless otherwise stated.

Two vectors $v$ and $w$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ are perpendicular with respect to the $B$-scalar product precisely when

$$
v \cdot{ }_{B} w=0,
$$

in which case we say that the vectors $v$ and $w$ are $B$-perpendicular and use the notation $" v \perp_{B} w$ ".

Extending the concept of Euclidean vector projection in Anton and Rorres [2, p. 206], as well as Strang [51, p. 174], the $B$-projection of a vector $w$ in the direction of $v$ is defined as

$$
\left(\operatorname{proj}_{v} w\right)_{B} \equiv\left(\frac{v \cdot{ }_{B} w}{v \cdot \cdot_{B} v}\right) v
$$

This has the following unique property, which is well-known in Euclidean geometry.
Lemma 1 For vectors $v$ and $w$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, let $u \equiv\left(\operatorname{proj}_{v} w\right)_{B}$. Then, $v$ is $B$-perpendicular to $w-u$.

Proof. Using the properties of the symmetric bilinear form and the definition of the $B$-projection, calculate the $B$-scalar product of $v$ and $w-u$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
v \cdot{ }_{B}(w-u) & =v \cdot{ }_{B} w-v \cdot{ }_{B} u \\
& =v \cdot \cdot_{B} w-v \cdot{ }_{B}\left(\frac{v \cdot B w}{v \cdot B v}\right) v \\
& =v \cdot{ }_{B} w-\left(\frac{v \cdot B w}{v \cdot B}\right)\left(v \cdot{ }_{B} v\right) \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

So $v$ is $B$-perpendicular to $w-u$, as required.

### 1.2 The vector product in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$

Given two vectors $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right)$ and $v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, the usual notion of the Euclidean vector product, introduced by Lagrange [34] and formalised by Gibbs [22, p. 65], is defined and denoted as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{1} \times v_{2} & =\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right) \times\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right) \\
& \equiv\left(y_{1} z_{2}-y_{2} z_{1}, x_{2} z_{1}-x_{1} z_{2}, x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Recall that the adjugate matrix of a $3 \times 3$ invertible matrix $M$, as defined separately
in Gantmacher [21, pp. 76-89] and Strang [51, p. 248], is

$$
\operatorname{adj} M \equiv(\operatorname{det} M) M^{-1} .
$$

This satisfies the property that for $3 \times 3$ invertible matrices $M$ and $N$

$$
\operatorname{adj}(M N)=(\operatorname{adj} N)(\operatorname{adj} M)
$$

and if $I$ is the $3 \times 3$ identity matrix then

$$
M(\operatorname{adj} M)=(\operatorname{adj} M) M=(\operatorname{det} M) I
$$

This notion extends also to $n \times n$ invertible matrices, but we will not need that.
For the matrix

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

representing an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, we will use the notation

$$
\operatorname{adj} B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
a_{2} a_{3}-b_{1}^{2} & b_{1} b_{2}-a_{3} b_{3} & b_{1} b_{3}-a_{2} b_{2} \\
b_{1} b_{2}-a_{3} b_{3} & a_{1} a_{3}-b_{2}^{2} & b_{2} b_{3}-a_{1} b_{1} \\
b_{1} b_{3}-a_{2} b_{2} & b_{2} b_{3}-a_{1} b_{1} & a_{1} a_{2}-b_{3}^{2}
\end{array}\right) \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\alpha_{1} & \beta_{3} & \beta_{2} \\
\beta_{3} & \alpha_{2} & \beta_{1} \\
\beta_{2} & \beta_{1} & \alpha_{3}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

We now define a generalised version of the Euclidean vector product, called the $B$-vector product, between two vectors $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ to be

$$
v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2} \equiv\left(v_{1} \times v_{2}\right) \operatorname{adj} B .
$$

The motivation for this definition is given in the following theorem. A similar result has been explored by Collomb [14], where a $3 \times 3$ matrix is inverted and the determinant of it is calculated using the Euclidean vector product.

Theorem 2 (Adjugate vector product theorem) Let $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ be three linearly independent vectors in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, and let $M$ be the matrix with rows $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$, i.e.

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right) .
$$

If the adjugate of the matrix $M B$ is written as

$$
\operatorname{adj}(M B) \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\mid & \mid & \mid \\
w_{1}^{T} & w_{2}^{T} & w_{3}^{T} \\
\mid & \mid & \mid
\end{array}\right)
$$

then

$$
w_{1}=v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}, \quad w_{2}=v_{3} \times_{B} v_{1} \quad \text { and } \quad w_{3}=v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}
$$

Proof. Suppose $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right), v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)$ and $v_{3} \equiv\left(x_{3}, y_{3}, z_{3}\right)$, so that

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
x_{1} & y_{1} & z_{1} \\
x_{2} & y_{2} & z_{2} \\
x_{3} & y_{3} & z_{3}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{adj} M & =\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
y_{2} z_{3}-y_{3} z_{2} & y_{3} z_{1}-y_{1} z_{3} & y_{1} z_{2}-y_{2} z_{1} \\
x_{3} z_{2}-x_{2} z_{3} & x_{1} z_{3}-x_{3} z_{1} & x_{2} z_{1}-x_{1} z_{2} \\
x_{2} y_{3}-x_{3} y_{2} & x_{3} y_{1}-x_{1} y_{3} & x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\mid & \mid & \mid \\
\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right)^{T} & \left(v_{3} \times v_{1}\right)^{T} & \left(v_{1} \times v_{2}\right)^{T} \\
\mid & \mid & \mid
\end{array}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\operatorname{adj}(M B)=\operatorname{adj} B \operatorname{adj} M$ and $B$ is symmetric,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\operatorname{adj}(M B))^{T} & =(\operatorname{adj} M)^{T} \operatorname{adj} B \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{lll}
- & v_{2} \times v_{3} & - \\
- & v_{3} \times v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{1} \times v_{2} & -
\end{array}\right) \operatorname{adj} B \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{lll}
- & \left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right) \operatorname{adj} B & - \\
- & \left(v_{3} \times v_{1}\right) \operatorname{adj} B & - \\
- & \left(v_{1} \times v_{2}\right) \operatorname{adj} B & -
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{lll}
- & v_{2} \times{ }^{2} v_{3} & - \\
- & v_{3} \times B v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{1} \times B v_{2} & -
\end{array}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Take the transpose of this matrix to obtain

$$
w_{1}=v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}, \quad w_{2}=v_{3} \times_{B} v_{1} \quad \text { and } \quad w_{3}=v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2},
$$

as required.
The $B$-vector product is a bilinear operation, i.e. for vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ and a scalar $\lambda$ in $\mathbb{F}$, we have that

$$
\begin{gathered}
v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{2}+v_{3}\right)=v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}+v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}, \\
\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right) \times_{B} v_{3}=v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}+v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\left(\lambda v_{1}\right) \times_{B} v_{2}=v_{1} \times_{B}\left(\lambda v_{2}\right)=\lambda\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) .
$$

The alternating property is also satisfied, i.e. for $v \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$,

$$
v \times_{B} v=\mathbf{0} .
$$

The $B$-vector product is anti-symmetric, i.e.

$$
v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}=-v_{2} \times_{B} v_{1},
$$

as the bilinear and alternating properties gives

$$
\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)=v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}+v_{2} \times_{B} v_{1}=\mathbf{0} .
$$

### 1.3 Results from generalised vector geometry

We now present some more complicated results regarding $B$-vector products. In what follows, the proofs will be based on modifications of standard Euclidean arguments, as in Spiegel's manual on vector analysis [48, pp. 16-34].

We start with the Euclidean scalar triple product of three vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, which, defined in Gibbs [22, pp. 68-71], can be expressed as

$$
\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right] \equiv v_{1} \cdot\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right)=6 v\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right) .
$$

This links the Euclidean scalar triple product to the signed volume of three vectors.
We can generalise this definition for an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form with matrix representation $B$; we will call this the $B$-scalar triple product and define it by

$$
\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} \equiv v_{1} \cdot B\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) .
$$

The following result allows for the evaluation of the $B$-scalar triple product, which extends a result of Gibbs [22, pp. 68-71]; this is a generalised version of the Euclidean scalar triple product defined above.

Theorem 3 (Scalar triple product theorem) Suppose $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ are vectors in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ and let $M$ be the matrix with rows $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$, i.e.

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B}=\left[v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{1}\right]_{B}=\left[v_{3}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right]_{B} } \\
= & -\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{2}\right]_{B}=-\left[v_{2}, v_{1}, v_{3}\right]_{B}=-\left[v_{3}, v_{2}, v_{1}\right]_{B} \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]=\operatorname{det}(M B) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. By the definition of the $B$-scalar triple product, the $B$-scalar product and the $B$-vector product,

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} } & =v_{1} \cdot B\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \\
& =v_{1} B\left(\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right) \operatorname{adj} B\right)^{T} \\
& =v_{1}(B \operatorname{adj} B)\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right)^{T} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $B \operatorname{adj} B=(\operatorname{det} B) I_{3}$ and $v_{1} \cdot\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right)=\operatorname{det} M$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} } & =(\operatorname{det} B)\left(v_{1}\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right)^{T}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left(v_{1} \cdot\left(v_{2} \times v_{3}\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{det} B \operatorname{det} M \\
& =\operatorname{det}(M B)
\end{aligned}
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.
From the Scalar triple product theorem, we can make an important implication regarding vector products, which is framed in the literatures as a property of vector products, for example in Anton and Rorres [2, p. 215].

Corollary 4 For vectors $v$ and $w$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}, v$ and $w$ are both $B$-perpendicular to $v \times_{B} w$, i.e.

$$
v \perp_{B}\left(v \times_{B} w\right) \quad \text { and } \quad w \perp_{B}\left(v \times_{B} w\right) .
$$

Proof. If one row or column of a matrix is a non-zero multiple of another then its determinant is zero. Therefore, by the Scalar triple product theorem,

$$
v \cdot_{B}\left(v \times_{B} w\right)=[v, v, w]_{B}=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v & - \\
- & v & - \\
- & w & -
\end{array}\right) \operatorname{det} B=0 .
$$

Similarly $[w, v, w]_{B}=0$ and thus $v \perp_{B}\left(v \times_{B} w\right)$ and $w \perp_{B}\left(v \times_{B} w\right)$.
The $B$-vector triple product of three vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3} \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$ will be defined by

$$
\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) .
$$

We can evaluate this by generalising the following result of Lagrange [34] for $B$-vector products. A detailed proof in English is given for the Euclidean case by Chapman and

Milne [9], while [48, pp. 28-29] provides a brute-force approach for the Euclidean case which involves expressing the vectors in three-dimensional co-ordinate form and expressing the Euclidean scalar and vector products in terms of them.

Theorem 5 (Lagrange's formula) For vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, the $B$-vector triple product $\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}$ can be expressed as

$$
\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right] .
$$

Proof. Let $w \equiv\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}$. We have that $\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \perp_{B} w$, as well as

$$
v_{2} \perp_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad v_{3} \perp_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) .
$$

Therefore, $w$ is parallel to a linear combination of $v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$, i.e. for some $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{F}$,

$$
w=\alpha v_{2}+\beta v_{3} .
$$

Furthermore, since $v_{1} \perp_{B} w$, the definition of $B$-perpendicularity shows that

$$
w \cdot{ }_{B} v_{1}=\alpha\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)+\beta\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)=0 .
$$

This equality is true precisely when $\alpha=\lambda\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)$ and $\beta=-\lambda\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}\right)$, for some non-zero $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$. Hence,

$$
w=\lambda\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right] .
$$

To proceed, we first want to prove that $\lambda$ is independent of the choices $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$, so that we can compute $w$ for arbitrary $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}$. First, suppose that $\lambda$ is dependent on $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}$; in other words, let $\lambda \equiv \lambda\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)$. Given another vector $d \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$, we have

$$
w \cdot{ }_{B} d=\lambda\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B d\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{3} \cdot{ }_{B} d\right)\right] .
$$

Directly substituting the definition of $w$, we use the Scalar triple product theorem to obtain

$$
w \cdot B d=\left(v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right) \cdot{ }_{B} d=v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B}\left(\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \times_{B} d\right)=-v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B}\left\langle d, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B} .
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
-v_{1} \cdot B\left\langle d, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B} & =-v_{1} \cdot B\left(\lambda\left(d, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)\left[\left(d \cdot \cdot_{B} v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(d \cdot \cdot_{B} v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right]\right) \\
& =\lambda\left(d, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B d\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{3} \cdot B d\right)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since this expression is equal to $w \cdot B d$, we deduce that $\lambda\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)=\lambda\left(d, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)$ and hence $\lambda$ must be independent of the choice of $v_{1}$. Given this observation, suppose instead
that $\lambda \equiv \lambda\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right)$, so that

$$
w \cdot{ }_{B} d=\lambda\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B d\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{3} \cdot B d\right)\right] .
$$

By direct substitution of $w$, we use the Scalar triple product theorem to obtain

$$
w \cdot{ }_{B} d=\left(v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right) \cdot{ }_{B} d=\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \cdot \cdot_{B}\left(d \times_{B} v_{1}\right)=v_{2} \cdot \cdot_{B}\left\langle v_{3}, d, v_{1}\right\rangle_{B} .
$$

Similarly,

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{2} \cdot B\left\langle v_{3}, d, v_{1}\right\rangle_{B} & =v_{2} \cdot B \lambda\left(d_{2}, v_{3}\right)\left(\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) d-\left(v_{3} \cdot B d\right) v_{1}\right) \\
& =\lambda\left(d, v_{1}\right)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B d\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{3} \cdot B d\right)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since this expression is also equal to $w \cdot{ }_{B} d$, we deduce that $\lambda\left(v_{2}, v_{3}\right)=\lambda\left(d, v_{1}\right)$ and conclude that $\lambda$ is indeed independent of $v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$, in addition to $v_{1}$. At this point, we can find $\lambda$ by substitution of arbitrary vectors for $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$. In that case, suppose that $v_{2} \equiv(1,0,0) \equiv e_{1}$ and $v_{1}=v_{3} \equiv(0,1,0) \equiv e_{2}$; then, noting the definition of adj $B$, we have

$$
v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}=(0,0,1)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
\alpha_{1} & \beta_{3} & \beta_{2} \\
\beta_{3} & \alpha_{2} & \beta_{1} \\
\beta_{2} & \beta_{1} & \alpha_{3}
\end{array}\right)=\left(\beta_{2}, \beta_{1}, \alpha_{3}\right)
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B} & =\left[(0,1,0) \times\left(\beta_{2}, \beta_{1}, \alpha_{3}\right)\right]\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\alpha_{1} & \beta_{3} & \beta_{2} \\
\beta_{3} & \alpha_{2} & \beta_{1} \\
\beta_{2} & \beta_{1} & \alpha_{3}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\alpha_{3}, 0,-\beta_{2}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
\alpha_{1} & \beta_{3} & \beta_{2} \\
\beta_{3} & \alpha_{2} & \beta_{1} \\
\beta_{2} & \beta_{1} & \alpha_{3}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3}-\beta_{2}^{2}, \alpha_{3} \beta_{3}-\beta_{1} \beta_{2}, 0\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left(a_{2},-b_{3}, 0\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}=e_{1} B e_{2}^{T}=b_{3}$ and $v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}=e_{2} B e_{2}^{T}=a_{2}$, it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\operatorname{det} B)\left(a_{2},-b_{3}, 0\right) & =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) e_{1}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) e_{2}\right] \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right] \\
& =\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B} .
\end{aligned}
$$

From this, we deduce that $\lambda=\operatorname{det} B$ and hence

$$
\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right],
$$

as required.
The $B$-vector product is generally not an associative operation, i.e. the six variants of $\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}$ generally yield different results. The following result, dating back to 1829 and attributed to Jacobi [31] in the Euclidean case, illustrates the link between three of them.

Theorem 6 (Jacobi identity) For vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$,

$$
\left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}+\left\langle v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{1}\right\rangle_{B}+\left\langle v_{3}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right\rangle_{B}=0 .
$$

Proof. Apply Lagrange's formula on each of the three summands to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right], \\
& \left\langle v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{1}\right\rangle_{B}=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}-\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{1}\right],
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\left\langle v_{3}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right\rangle_{B}=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{2} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right) v_{1}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}\right] .
$$

So,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\langle v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right\rangle_{B}+\left\langle v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{1}\right\rangle_{B}+\left\langle v_{3}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right\rangle_{B} \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}\right]+(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) v_{3}-\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{1}\right] \\
& +(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{1}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}\right] \\
= & 0,
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.
Combining this result with the alternating and bilinear properties of the cross product, we deduce that $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ forms a Lie algebra with respect to vector addition and the $B$-vector product. This concept is defined in Belifante and Kolman [4, pp. 12-13], as well as Humphreys [30, p. 1], for a general vector space over an arbitrary field that is endowed with a general Lie bracket, for which the Euclidean vector product is provided as the simplest example of a Lie algebra over the "real number field". This provides motivation for a study of three-dimensional Lie algebras founded purely on generalised vector products over general fields, which we will not pursue here.

The following result allows us to compute the vector $\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)$, based on the properties of Euclidean vector products. We will call such an operation a $B$-quadruple vector product, which extends the result in the Euclidean case by Gibbs [22, pp. 76-77].

Theorem 7 (Quadruple vector product theorem) For vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}$ and $v_{4}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right) & =(\operatorname{det} B)\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{4}\right]_{B} v_{3}-\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} v_{4}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right]_{B} v_{2}-\left[v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right]_{B} v_{1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. If $u \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}$, then use Lagrange's formula to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right) & =\left\langle u, v_{3}, v_{4}\right\rangle_{B} \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(u \cdot_{B} v_{4}\right) v_{3}-\left(u \cdot_{B} v_{3}\right) v_{4}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

From the Scalar triple product theorem,

$$
u \cdot \cdot_{B} v_{3}=\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} \quad \text { and } \quad u \cdot \cdot_{B} v_{4}=\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{4}\right]_{B} .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{4}\right]_{B} v_{3}-\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} v_{4}\right] .
$$

Also, if $w \equiv v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}$, then use Lagrange's formula to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right) & =\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B} w=-\left\langle w, v_{1}, v_{2}\right\rangle_{B}=\left\langle w, v_{2}, v_{1}\right\rangle_{B} \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(w \cdot{ }_{B} v_{1}\right) v_{2}-\left(w \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}\right) v_{1}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

From the Scalar triple product theorem,

$$
w \cdot B v_{1}=\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right]_{B} \quad \text { and } \quad w \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}=\left[v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right]_{B} .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right]_{B} v_{2}-\left[v_{2}, v_{3}, v_{4}\right]_{B} v_{1}\right] .
$$

Thus, the desired result is obtained.
The following corollary will come in handy as we progress through the thesis.
Corollary 8 For vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, and

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right),
$$

we have

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)=\left[(\operatorname{det} B)^{2}(\operatorname{det} M)\right] v_{1} .
$$

Proof. By the Quadruple vector product theorem,

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} v_{1}-\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{1}\right]_{B} v_{3}\right) .
$$

Since $\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{1}\right]_{B}=0$,

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} v_{1} .
$$

We then use the Scalar triple product theorem to obtain

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)^{2}(\operatorname{det} M) v_{1},
$$

as required.
In addition to the $B$-quadruple vector product, we can also talk about a $B$-quadruple scalar product, which is the operation given by $\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)$. The following result allows us to compute $B$-quadruple scalar products purely in terms of $B$-scalar products; this is a generalisation of a result of independent works by Binet [5] and Cauchy [8], as highlighted by Brualdi and Schneider [7], and is thus called the Binet-Cauchy identity. The Euclidean version of the following result is also explained and proven in English in [48, p. 29].

Theorem 9 (Binet-Cauchy identity) For vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}$ and $v_{4}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$,

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{4}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{4}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\right] .
$$

Proof. Let $w \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}$, so that by the Scalar triple product theorem,

$$
w \cdot B\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)=\left[v_{4}, w, v_{3}\right]_{B} .
$$

By Lagrange's formula,

$$
\begin{aligned}
w \times_{B} v_{3} & =\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B} v_{3}=-\left\langle v_{3}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right\rangle_{B} \\
& =-(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{1}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}\right] \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{2} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right) v_{1}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right) & =\left((\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{2}-\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) v_{1}\right]\right) \cdot v_{4} \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{4}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{4}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, the desired result is obtained.
The following result is a special case of the Binet-Cauchy identity, which will be important for calculations in later parts of the thesis. This is a generalisation of another result of Lagrange [34], which is also shown in English by Steele [49, pp. 37-39].

Theorem 10 (Lagrange's identity) Given vectors $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$,

$$
Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2}\right] .
$$

Proof. We start with the Binet-Cauchy identity

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{3} \times_{B} v_{4}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{4}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{4}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\right] .
$$

If $v_{3}=v_{1}$ and $v_{4}=v_{2}$, then we substitute these quantities into our equation to obtain the desired result.

### 1.4 Geometric objects in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$

Besides points, the fundamental objects in the affine geometry of $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ include lines and planes which we now introduce.


Figure 1.1: Line $A_{1} A_{2}$

A line in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ is an expression involving two distinct points, say $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$, which can be denoted by $A_{1} A_{2}$ (see Figure 1.1); it has the condition that two lines $A_{1} A_{2}$ and $B_{1} B_{2}$ are equal precisely when the points $B_{1}$ and $B_{2}$ can be expressed in the form $A_{1}+\lambda \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}$, for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$. In such a case, we say that the vector $\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}$ (or any non-zero multiple of it) is called a direction vector of the line $A_{1} A_{2}$. The line $A_{1} A_{2}$ can be represented by an affine combination, i.e. any point $X$ on the line $A_{1} A_{2}$ can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
X & =A_{1}+\lambda \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}=A_{1}+\lambda\left(A_{2}-A_{1}\right) \\
& =(1-\lambda) A_{1}+\lambda A_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$.
A plane in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ is an expression involving three non-collinear points, say $A_{1}, A_{2}$ and $A_{3}$, which is denoted by $A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}$ (see Figure 1.2); it has the condition that two planes $A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}$ and $B_{1} B_{2} B_{3}$ are equal precisely when the points $B_{1}, B_{2}$ and $B_{3}$ can be expressed in the form $A_{1}+\lambda \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}+\mu \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{3}}$, for some $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{F}$. In such a case, we say that the vectors $\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}$ and $\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{3}}$ (or any two non-zero linearly independent vectors which are linear combinations of them) are spanning vectors of the plane $A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}$. The plane $A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}$ can be similarly expressed as an affine combination, i.e. for any point $X$ lying on $A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}$,


Figure 1.2: Plane $A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}$
we have for $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{F}$ that

$$
\begin{aligned}
X & =A_{1}+\lambda \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}+\mu \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{3}} \\
& =A_{1}+\lambda\left(A_{2}-A_{1}\right)+\mu\left(A_{3}-A_{1}\right) \\
& =(1-\lambda-\mu) A_{1}+\lambda A_{2}+\mu A_{3} .
\end{aligned}
$$



Figure 1.3: Triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$
A triangle in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ will be defined as an unordered collection of three points in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$. Given three points $A_{0}, A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, we denote a triangle by $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ (see Figure 1.3). In addition to the points $A_{0}, A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$, such a triangle also has lines

$$
l_{01} \equiv A_{0} A_{1}, \quad l_{02} \equiv A_{0} A_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad l_{12} \equiv A_{1} A_{2} .
$$

We define a side of a triangle to be a pair of points which determine a line, and a vertex of a triangle to be a pair of lines which determine a point. The triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ has sides

$$
\overline{A_{0} A_{1}}, \quad \overline{A_{0} A_{2}} \text { and } \overline{A_{1} A_{2}},
$$

as well as vertices

$$
\overline{l_{01} l_{02}}, \quad \overline{l_{01} l_{12}} \text { and } \overline{l_{02} l_{12}} .
$$

Similarly, a tetrahedron in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ will be defined as an unordered collection of four points in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$. Given four points $A_{0}, A_{1}, A_{2}$ and $A_{3}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, we denote a tetrahedron with these points by $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ (see Figure 1.4). In addition to points, such a tetrahedron also has lines

$$
\begin{gathered}
l_{01} \equiv A_{0} A_{1}, \quad l_{02} \equiv A_{0} A_{2}, \quad l_{03} \equiv A_{0} A_{3} \\
l_{12} \equiv A_{1} A_{2}, \quad l_{13} \equiv A_{1} A_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad l_{23} \equiv A_{2} A_{3},
\end{gathered}
$$

as well as planes

$$
A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, \quad A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, \quad A_{0} A_{2} A_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}
$$



Figure 1.4: Tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$
The edge of a tetrahedron is a collection of two points of it which defines a line, and the triangle of a tetrahedron is a collection of three points of it which defines a plane. The six sides of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\overline{A_{0} A_{1}}, \quad \overline{A_{0} A_{2}}, \quad \overline{A_{0} A_{3}}, \quad \overline{A_{1} A_{2}}, \quad \overline{A_{1} A_{3}} \text { and } \overline{A_{2} A_{3}},
$$

and the four triangles of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}, \quad \overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}}, \quad \overline{A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}} \text { and } \overline{A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}} .
$$

A vertex of a tetrahedron is a collection of two concurrent lines of it. The twelve vertices of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \overline{l_{01} l_{02}}, \quad \overline{l_{01} l_{12}}, \quad \overline{l_{02} l_{12}}, \quad \overline{l_{01} l_{03}}, \quad \overline{l_{01} l_{13}}, \quad \overline{l_{03} l_{13}}, \\
& \overline{l_{02} l_{03}}, \quad \overline{l_{02} l_{23}}, \quad \overline{l_{03} l_{23}}, \quad \overline{l_{12} l_{13}}, \quad \overline{l_{12} l_{23}} \text { and } \overline{l_{13} l_{23}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

A corner of a tetrahedron is a collection of three concurrent lines of it. The four corners of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\overline{l_{01} l_{02} l_{03}}, \quad \overline{l_{01} l_{12} l_{13}}, \quad \overline{l_{02} l_{12} l_{23}} \text { and } \overline{l_{03} l_{13} l_{23}}
$$

### 1.5 Projective geometry

By extending our understanding of geometry from the affine setting to the projective setting, we will introduce some new ideas and notions that will aid us in our study of projective geometry. We specifically use the methods in [55] and [60], emphasising projective geometry from the view of spherical/elliptic geometry.

We will steer away from the usual formulations involving "infinite sets", and rather frame the main definitions in terms of types of objects.

### 1.5.1 Projective points, lines and triangles

We will associate to $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, the associated vector space of $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, the two-dimensional projective space denoted by $\mathbb{P}^{2}$, where the objects of interest are projective points and projective lines.

A projective point $p$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ is a single vector enclosed in square brackets, with the condition that two projective points $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ are equal precisely when one of the vectors is a (non-zero) scalar multiple of the other. For a non-zero vector $v \equiv(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$ and a non-zero scalar $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$, we can denote a projective point $p$ by

$$
p \equiv[v]=[(x, y, z)]=[\lambda v] .
$$

A projective line $L$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ is a list of two linearly independent vectors enclosed in double square brackets, with the condition that two projective lines $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ are equal precisely when the vectors in $L_{2}$ can be written as a linear combination of the vectors in $L_{1}$. By elementary linear algebra, this is a symmetric condition. For $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right)$ and $v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, we may denote such a projective line by

$$
\left.L \equiv\left[\left[v_{1}, v_{2}\right]\right]=\left[\left[\alpha v_{1}+\beta v_{2}, \gamma v_{1}+\delta v_{2}\right]\right]=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
x_{1} & y_{1} & z_{1} \\
x_{2} & y_{2} & z_{2}
\end{array}\right]\right],
$$

where $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \in \mathbb{F}$ satisfy the condition

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\alpha & \gamma \\
\beta & \delta
\end{array}\right)=\alpha \delta-\beta \gamma \neq 0
$$

We note the use of double brackets when defining projective lines. This is to indicate the invariance of the choice of two linearly independent vectors for the projective line under a linear map. Such notation is unnecessary for projective points, as invariance under a $1 \times 1$
matrix and invariance under non-zero scalar multiplication are equivalent notions. Hence, we will use single brackets to denote projective points.

We will make an important association between projective points and lines in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ with one-dimensional and two-dimensional subspaces (respectively) of $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, which is central to calculations in projective geometry and trigonometry. We also note that lower-case lettering in projective geometry is reserved for projective points and upper-case lettering in projective geometry is reserved for projective lines. In the case of affine geometry, this notation is reversed; while subtle, this allows us to highlight the natural connection, and distinction, between affine space and projective space.

For $v_{1} \equiv\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right), v_{2} \equiv\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)$ and $v_{3} \equiv\left(x_{3}, y_{3}, z_{3}\right)$, we say that the projective point $p=\left[v_{3}\right]$ is incident with the projective line $L=\left[\left[v_{1}, v_{2}\right]\right]$ precisely when

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}
x_{1} & y_{1} & z_{1} \\
x_{2} & y_{2} & z_{2} \\
x_{3} & y_{3} & z_{3}
\end{array}\right)=0
$$

This is well-defined and equivalent to saying that $p$ lies on $L$, or that $L$ passes through $p$.

Given two distinct projective points $p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right]$ and $p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right]$, we can define the projective line in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ passing through $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ to be the join of $p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$, and denote this by

$$
p_{1} p_{2} \equiv\left[\left[v_{1}, v_{2}\right]\right] .
$$

We will also define the meet of two distinct projective lines $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$ to be the projective point $p$ that lies on both $L_{1}$ and $L_{2}$. If

$$
L_{1} \equiv\left[\left[v_{1}, w_{1}\right]\right] \quad \text { and } \quad L_{2} \equiv\left[\left[v_{2}, w_{2}\right]\right]
$$

then we denote their meet by

$$
L_{1} L_{2} \equiv[u]
$$

where the vector $u$ satisfies the equations

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & w_{1} & - \\
- & u & -
\end{array}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & w_{2} & - \\
- & u & -
\end{array}\right)=0
$$

Given three linearly independent vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ in $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ and

$$
p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right], \quad p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right] \quad \text { and } \quad p_{3} \equiv\left[v_{3}\right]
$$

we define a projective triangle in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ to be an unordered collection of these three projective points and denote this by $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ (see Figure 1.5). A construction of [64], we will also refer to a projective triangle as a tripod.


Figure 1.5: Tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$

With $p_{1}, p_{2}$ and $p_{3}$ as the projective points of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$, we also have the joins of any two points of it as the projective lines and denote them by

$$
L_{12} \equiv p_{1} p_{2}, \quad L_{13} \equiv p_{1} p_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad L_{23} \equiv p_{2} p_{3} .
$$

In addition to the points and lines, we take the projective sides of the tripod to be the set of any two points of it which defines a line and the projective vertices of the tripod to be the set of any two lines of it which defines a point. We will denote the projective sides of the tripod by

$$
\overline{p_{1} p_{2}}, \quad \overline{p_{1} p_{3}} \quad \text { and } \overline{p_{2} p_{3}},
$$

and the projective vertices by

$$
\overline{L_{1} L_{2}}, \quad \overline{L_{1} L_{3}} \text { and } \overline{L_{2} L_{3}} .
$$

### 1.5.2 Symmetric bilinear form, perpendicularity and duality

Since our objects in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ can be viewed as familiar one-dimensional and two-dimensional subspaces of $\mathbb{V}^{3}$, we will perform further calculations on $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ in terms of $\mathbb{V}^{3}$.

Recall that a $3 \times 3$ symmetric matrix $B$ determines a symmetric bilinear form, or $B$ scalar product, on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ defined by $u \cdot{ }_{B} v \equiv u B v^{T}$; in addition to this, we also defined the $B$-vector product to be $u \times_{B} v \equiv(u \times v)$ adj $B$.

We can then express a projective line $L \equiv\left[\left[v_{1}, v_{2}\right]\right]$ as

$$
L \equiv\left\langle v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right\rangle=\left\langle\lambda\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)\right\rangle
$$

for any non-zero $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$. For projective points $p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right]$ and $p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right]$, we can define the $B$-normal of the projective line $L \equiv p_{1} p_{2}$ to be the projective point

$$
p_{1} \times_{B} p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right] .
$$

We now define the $B$-dual of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ to be the tripod $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$, where

$$
r_{1} \equiv p_{2} \times_{B} p_{3}, \quad r_{2} \equiv p_{1} \times_{B} p_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad r_{3} \equiv p_{1} \times_{B} p_{2}
$$

Such a tripod, which is another construction of [64], will be called the $B$-dual projective


Figure 1.6: $B$-dual tripod $\overline{q_{1} q_{2} q_{3}}$ of tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$
triangle of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ (see Figure 1.6 for a Euclidean example); we will also call this a $B$-dual tripod of $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$. There is a notion of $B$-duality for tripods.

Proposition 11 If the $B$-dual of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ is $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$, then the $B$-dual of the tripod $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ is $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$.

Proof. Let $p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right], p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right]$ and $p_{3} \equiv\left[v_{3}\right]$, so that

$$
r_{1}=p_{2} \times_{B} p_{3}=\left[v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right], \quad r_{2}=p_{1} \times_{B} p_{3}=\left[v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right]
$$

and

$$
r_{3}=p_{1} \times_{B} p_{2}=\left[v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right] .
$$

Suppose that the $B$-dual tripod of $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ is given by $\overline{t_{1} t_{2} t_{3}}$, where

$$
t_{1} \equiv r_{2} \times_{B} r_{3}, \quad t_{2} \equiv r_{1} \times_{B} r_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad t_{3} \equiv r_{1} \times_{B} r_{2} .
$$

By the definition of the $B$-normal, we use Corollary 8 to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
t_{1} & =\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)\right] \\
& =\left[(\operatorname{det} B)\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{2}\right]_{B} v_{1}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $B$ is non-degenerate and the vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ are linearly independent, ( $\left.\operatorname{det} B\right)\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{2}\right]_{B} \neq$ 0 and thus by the definition of a projective point

$$
t_{1}=\left[v_{1}\right]=p_{1} .
$$

By symmetry, we must have that $t_{2}=p_{2}$ and $t_{3}=p_{3}$, and hence $\overline{t_{1} t_{2} t_{3}}=\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$. Thus, the $B$-dual tripod of $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ is $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$.

### 1.6 Rational trigonometric quantities

We now proceed from the geometry of $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ and $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ to the affine and projective rational trigonometry in the respective spaces. We assume that the associated vector space $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ of $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ is equipped with a symmetric bilinear form with matrix representation

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

### 1.6.1 Affine rational trigonometry

We first extend Wildberger's definition of the quadrance to an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form. The $B$-quadrance between two points $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ is

$$
Q_{B}\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right) \equiv Q_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}\right)=\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}} \cdot B \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}
$$

In what follows, define Archimedes' function [59, p. 64] as

$$
A(a, b, c) \equiv(a+b+c)^{2}-2\left(a^{2}+b^{2}+c^{2}\right)
$$

Simple algebraic rewriting gives us also the asymmetric forms

$$
A(a, b, c)=4 a b-(a+b-c)^{2}=4 a c-(a+c-b)^{2}=4 b c-(b+c-a)^{2}
$$

Wildberger introduced Archimedes' function to give a rational analog to the well-known Heron's formula, as shown in English by Heath [27, pp. 321-323]. The name comes from the fact that Arab sources have attributed this formula to Archimedes, as highlighted in [58]. For a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in the planar Euclidean setting with $B$-quadrances

$$
Q_{01} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{1}\right), \quad Q_{02} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right)
$$

[59, p. 68] showed that the quantity $A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right)$ is equal to 16 times the squared area of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$; note that in the Euclidean setting, the matrix $B$ is the $2 \times 2$ identity matrix. Motivated by this, we can use Archimedes' function and our vector formulation to obtain a new result for rational trigonometry in three dimensions.

Theorem 12 (Three-dimensional quadrea theorem) Given a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, suppose that $v_{01} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}}, v_{02} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}$ and $v_{12} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}$, and let

$$
Q_{01} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{1}\right), \quad Q_{02} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right)
$$

Then,

$$
Q_{B}\left(v_{01} \times_{B} v_{02}\right)=Q_{B}\left(v_{01} \times_{B} v_{12}\right)=Q_{B}\left(v_{02} \times_{B} v_{12}\right)=\frac{\operatorname{det} B}{4} A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right)
$$

Proof. If $v_{01} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}}$ and $v_{02} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}$, Lagrange's identity gives

$$
Q_{B}\left(v_{01} \times_{B} v_{02}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[Q_{B}\left(v_{01}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{02}\right)-\left(v_{01} \cdot B v_{02}\right)^{2}\right] .
$$

Since

$$
v_{01 \cdot B} v_{02}=\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}}{2},
$$

we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{B}\left(v_{01} \times_{B} v_{02}\right) & =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[Q_{01} Q_{02}-\left(\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}}{2}\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =\frac{\operatorname{det} B}{4}\left[4 Q_{01} Q_{02}-\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =\frac{\operatorname{det} B}{4} A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By symmetry, we will obtain the same result when computing $Q_{B}\left(v_{01} \times_{B} v_{12}\right)$ and $Q_{B}\left(v_{02} \times_{B} v_{12}\right)$.

This result motivates us to define the $B$-quadrea of a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ with $B$ quadrances

$$
Q_{01} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{1}\right), \quad Q_{02} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right)
$$

to be the quantity

$$
\mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right) \equiv A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right),
$$

so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right) & =\frac{4}{\operatorname{det} B} Q_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}} \times_{B} \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}\right) \\
& =\frac{4}{\operatorname{det} B} Q_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{0}} \times_{B} \overrightarrow{A_{1} A_{2}}\right) \\
& =\frac{4}{\operatorname{det} B} Q_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{A_{2} A_{0}} \times{ }_{B} \overrightarrow{A_{2} A_{1}}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This is an extension of the usual definition of quadrea as given in [59, p. 68].
If we have a tetrahedron $\overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $v_{1} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}}, v_{2} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}$ and $v_{3} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{3}}$, then we define its $B$-quadrume as

$$
\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right) \equiv 144(\operatorname{det} B)\left(v\left(v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right)\right)^{2} .
$$

We can express the $B$-quadrume of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in terms of its $B$-quadrances; this result will explain the choice of the factor 144 in the definition.

Theorem 13 (Quadrume theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, define $Q_{i j} \equiv$ $Q_{B}\left(A_{i}, A_{j}\right)$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$. The $B$-quadrume of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ can be expressed as

$$
\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
2 Q_{01} & Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12} & Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13} \\
Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12} & 2 Q_{02} & Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23} \\
Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13} & Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23} & 2 Q_{03}
\end{array}\right| .
$$

Proof. Let $v_{1} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}}, v_{2} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}$ and $v_{3} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{3}}$, and let

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{lll}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right)
$$

Using the Scalar triple product theorem, we have from the definition of the $B$-quadrume that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right) & =144 \operatorname{det} B\left[\frac{\operatorname{det}(M)}{6}\right]^{2} \\
& =4 \operatorname{det}\left(M B M^{T}\right) \\
& =4\left|\begin{array}{lll}
v_{1} \cdot B & v_{1} & v_{1} \cdot B v_{2} \\
v_{1} \cdot v_{1} \cdot B v_{3} \\
v_{2} \cdot v_{2} & v_{2} \cdot B v_{2} & v_{2} \cdot B v_{3} \\
v_{1} \cdot & v_{2} \cdot B v_{3} & v_{3} \cdot B v_{3}
\end{array}\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

The diagonal entries evaluate to

$$
v_{1} \cdot B v_{1}=Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right)=Q_{01}, \quad v_{2} \cdot B v_{2}=Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)=Q_{02}
$$

and

$$
v_{3} \cdot B v_{3}=Q_{B}\left(v_{3}\right)=Q_{03} .
$$

By the polarisation formula, we also have

$$
v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}=\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}}{2}, \quad v_{1} \cdot \cdot_{B} v_{3}=\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13}}{2}
$$

and

$$
v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}=\frac{Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23}}{2} .
$$

Substitute the above six quantities into the expression for $\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)$ and simplify to get

$$
\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
2 Q_{01} & Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12} & Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13} \\
Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12} & 2 Q_{02} & Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23} \\
Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13} & Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23} & 2 Q_{03}
\end{array}\right|
$$

Remark 14 The $B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)$ can be written as the polynomial

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}+\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)\left(Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13}\right)\left(Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23}\right) \\
& -Q_{01}\left(Q_{02}+Q_{03}-Q_{23}\right)^{2}-Q_{02}\left(Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13}\right)^{2}-Q_{03}\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

which is a symmetric expression in the B-quadrances. This means that the choice of vectors in the definition of the $B$-quadrume is arbitrary, as long as they emanate from a single point of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$.

The following result is of use to us as we progress throughout the thesis.
Theorem 15 (Quadrume matrix product theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, let $v_{i} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{i}}$ for $i=1,2,3$ and let

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then,

$$
\mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)=4 \operatorname{det}\left(M B M^{T}\right) .
$$

Proof. This is a direct result from the proof of the Quadrume theorem.
The determinant present in the definition is called the Cayley-Menger determinant. Appearing in Audet [3], Dörrie [19, pp. 285-289] and Sommerville [47, pp. 124-126], this determinant forms the basis for calculating higher-dimensional trigonometric quantities. While named after Cayley and Menger, this formula was known to Euler and dates back to works of Tartaglia.

Given two lines $l_{1}$ and $l_{2}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with respective direction vectors $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$, we define the $B$-spread between them to be

$$
s_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)},
$$

which by Lagrange's identity can be rewritten as

$$
s_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}\right)=\frac{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)} .
$$

While the former expression is an extension of Wildberger's definition of the spread [59, p. 73], the latter expression is a reformulation in terms of the $B$-vector product. Complementary to the spread, we will also define the $B$-cross between the same two lines $l_{1}$ and $l_{2}$ to be

$$
c_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}\right) \equiv 1-s_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}\right)=\frac{\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)} .
$$

This has been defined in the Euclidean case in [59, p. 74].
In what follows, we can represent a plane $\Pi$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with spanning vectors $v$ and $w$ in terms of a $B$-normal vector $n \equiv v \times_{B} w$, so that any point $X$ on $\Pi$ which passes through a given point $A$ satisfies the equation

$$
\overrightarrow{A X} \cdot{ }_{B} n=0
$$

So, given two planes $\Pi_{1}$ and $\Pi_{2}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $B$-normal vectors $n_{1}, n_{2}$, we define the $B$ dihedral spread, or just the dihedral spread, between them to be

$$
E_{B}\left(\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(n_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} n_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(n_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{2}\right)} .
$$

This can be rewritten using Lagrange's identity as

$$
E_{B}\left(\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}\right)=\frac{Q_{B}\left(n_{1} \times_{B} n_{2}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(n_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{2}\right)}
$$

The $B$-dihedral spread was introduced for the Euclidean setting in [63] as a rational analog to dihedral angles between planes in three dimensions. We will also define the $B$-dihedral cross between the same two planes $\Pi_{1}$ and $\Pi_{2}$ to be

$$
C_{B}\left(\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}\right) \equiv 1-E_{B}\left(\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}\right)=\frac{\left(n_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} n_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(n_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{2}\right)} .
$$

Note that the definitions of $B$-spread, $B$-cross, $B$-dihedral spread and $B$-dihedral cross are well-defined, i.e. the quantities do not vary when the vectors are varied under non-zero scalar multiplication.

Suppose now we have three concurrent lines $l_{1}, l_{2}$ and $l_{3}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with respective direction vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$. We define the $B$-solid spread between $l_{1}, l_{2}$ and $l_{3}$ to be

$$
\mathcal{S}_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}, l_{3}\right) \equiv \frac{\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B}\right)^{2}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{3}\right)} .
$$

With the inclusion of the factor $\operatorname{det} B$ in the denominator, we have that the $B$-solid spread is a well-defined quantity, i.e. for a non-zero scalar $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{S}_{\lambda B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}, l_{3}\right) & =\frac{\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{\lambda B}\right)^{2}}{(\operatorname{det} \lambda B) Q_{\lambda B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{\lambda B}\left(v_{2}\right) Q_{\lambda B}\left(v_{3}\right)} \\
& =\frac{\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]\left(\lambda^{3} \operatorname{det} B\right)\right)^{2}}{\lambda^{3}\left(\lambda^{3} \operatorname{det} B\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{3}\right)} \\
& =\frac{\lambda^{6}\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B}\right)^{2}}{\lambda^{6}(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{3}\right)} \\
& =\mathcal{S}_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}, l_{3}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

and if we multiply any of the direction vectors of $l_{1}, l_{2}$ or $l_{3}$ by a non-zero scalar then the quantity remains invariant.
$B$-solid spreads are rational analogs of the solid angle, or the spherical excess, of a spherical triangle; a definition of Girard's but explained in English by Todhunter [53, pp. 72-73], the notion of a solid spread was introduced in [63] for the Euclidean setting. In the next chapter we will link the definition of solid spread to certain results in projective geometry.

We can also consider a rational analog of the solid angle of a dual spherical triangle [24]. Given the same lines $l_{1}, l_{2}$ and $l_{3}$ as before, we construct concurrent lines $k_{12}, k_{13}$ and $k_{23}$ with respective direction vectors

$$
n_{12} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}, \quad n_{13} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad n_{23} \equiv v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3} .
$$

We define the $B$-dual solid spread between $l_{1}, l_{2}$ and $l_{3}$ to be

$$
\mathcal{D}_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}, l_{3}\right) \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(k_{12}, k_{13}, k_{23}\right) .
$$

Note again that this quantity is well-defined, since the solid spread is well-defined. So, the $B$-dual solid spread associated to a tripod is the $B$-solid spread associated to its dual tripod. This is a novel quantity in the affine case, for which its significance and its relevance to projective geometry will be highlighted later on.

### 1.6.2 Elementary results from affine rational trigonometry

We present some results with regards to the trigonometric quantities we have just defined. Here, we will restrict our presentation to the two-dimensional aspects of trigonometry, and create a separate chapter for a discussion on the trigonometry of the tetrahedron.

In what follows, we will consider a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $B$-quadrances

$$
Q_{01} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{1}\right), \quad Q_{02} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right),
$$

$B$-spreads

$$
s_{0} \equiv s_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{0} A_{2}\right), \quad s_{1} \equiv s_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{1} A_{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad s_{2} \equiv s_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2}\right),
$$

and $B$-quadrea

$$
\mathcal{A} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right)
$$

We illustrate the trigonometric quantities associated to $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in Figure 1.7. Note that throughout the thesis we will follow Wildberger's notation of using small rectangles to denote $B$-quadrances in our diagrams, and straight line segments at vertices to denote $B$-spreads.

We draw on already-proven results from [59], but offer alternative proofs using the


Figure 1.7: A triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}$, and $B$-spreads $s_{0}$, $s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ displayed
three-dimensional framework we have set up in this chapter. [59] dealt with the twodimensional situation, and [55] discussed the same treatment in higher dimensions. In our three-dimensional framework, the $B$-vector product allows for a special treatment and we aim to prove the results now for an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form.

The first result is an analog of the cosine law in classical trigonometry.
Theorem 16 (Cross law) For a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}$, and $B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$, the relations

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right), \\
& \left(Q_{01}+Q_{12}-Q_{02}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{12}\left(1-s_{1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\left(Q_{02}+Q_{12}-Q_{01}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{02} Q_{12}\left(1-s_{2}\right)
$$

are satisfied.
Proof. Let $v_{1} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}}$ and $v_{2} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}$, so that by the polarisation formula,

$$
v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}=\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}}{2} .
$$

Rearrange this result to get

$$
Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}=2\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)
$$

and then square both sides to get

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2} .
$$

Since $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ are the respective direction vectors of the lines $A_{0} A_{1}$ and $A_{0} A_{2}$, the
definition of the $B$-spread gives

$$
s_{0}=1-\frac{\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)} .
$$

Rearrange this to get

$$
\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2}=Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)\left(1-s_{0}\right)=Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right)
$$

and so

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right)
$$

The other relations follow by symmetry.
Note that we can rewrite the Cross law in terms of the crosses

$$
c_{0} \equiv 1-s_{0}, \quad c_{1} \equiv 1-s_{1} \quad \text { and } \quad c_{2} \equiv 1-s_{2} .
$$

We can use the Cross law as a fundamental building block for a number of other results. For instance, we can express the $B$-quadrea of a triangle in terms of its $B$-quadrances and $B$-spreads.

Theorem 17 (Quadrea spread theorem) For a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}, B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$, and $B$-quadrea $\mathcal{A}$, we have

$$
\mathcal{A}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02} s_{0}=4 Q_{01} Q_{12} s_{1}=4 Q_{02} Q_{12} s_{2} .
$$

Proof. From one of the Cross law relations

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right),
$$

rearrange to get

$$
4 Q_{01} Q_{02}-\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02} s_{0}
$$

Rewrite the left hand side to obtain

$$
A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right)=\mathcal{A}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02} s_{0} .
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.
We can use the Quadrea spread theorem to determine whether three points in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ lie on the same line.

Theorem 18 (Triple quad formula) Let $A_{0}, A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ be three points in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ and

$$
Q_{01} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{1}\right), \quad Q_{02} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0}, A_{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{1}, A_{2}\right) .
$$

If $A_{0}, A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are collinear, then

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}+Q_{12}\right)^{2}=2\left(Q_{01}^{2}+Q_{02}^{2}+Q_{12}^{2}\right)
$$

Proof. Consider the triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}, B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$, and $B$-quadrea $\mathcal{A}$. If $A_{0}, A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are collinear, then $s_{0}=s_{1}=s_{2}=0$ and thus $\mathcal{A}=0$ by the Quadrea spread theorem. By the definition of the $B$-quadrea,

$$
A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right)=\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}+Q_{12}\right)^{2}-2\left(Q_{01}^{2}+Q_{02}^{2}+Q_{12}^{2}\right)=0
$$

Rearrange the equation to obtain

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}+Q_{12}\right)^{2}=2\left(Q_{01}^{2}+Q_{02}^{2}+Q_{12}^{2}\right)
$$

Thus, the desired result is obtained.
The Cross law also gives the most important result in geometry and trigonometry: Pythagoras' theorem.

Theorem 19 (Pythagoras' theorem) For a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}$, and $B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}, s_{0}=1$ precisely when

$$
Q_{01}+Q_{02}=Q_{12}
$$

Proof. Start with the Cross law relation

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right)
$$

If $s_{0}=1$, then

$$
4 Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right)=0
$$

This gives

$$
Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}=0
$$

and hence

$$
Q_{01}+Q_{02}=Q_{12}
$$

Conversely, if $Q_{01}+Q_{02}=Q_{12}$ then, $Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}=0$ and we thus have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right) & =\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}+Q_{12}\right)^{2}-2\left(Q_{01}^{2}+Q_{02}^{2}+Q_{12}^{2}\right) \\
& =4 Q_{01} Q_{02}-\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2} \\
& =4 Q_{01} Q_{02}
\end{aligned}
$$

Comparing this result with the Quadrea spread theorem, we must conclude that $s_{0}=1$ as required.

One other use of the Quadrea spread theorem is in determining ratios between $B$ -
spreads and $B$-quadrances, which is a rational analog of the sine law in classical trigonometry.

Theorem 20 (Spread law) For a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{01}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{12}, B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$, and B-quadrea $\mathcal{A}$, the following relation is satisfied:

$$
\frac{s_{0}}{Q_{12}}=\frac{s_{1}}{Q_{02}}=\frac{s_{2}}{Q_{01}}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{12}} .
$$

Proof. We start with the Quadrea spread theorem, which is

$$
\mathcal{A}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02} s_{0}=4 Q_{01} Q_{12} s_{1}=4 Q_{02} Q_{12} s_{2}
$$

Compute $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ in terms of this result to get

$$
s_{0}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02}}, \quad s_{1}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{12}} \quad \text { and } \quad s_{2}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 Q_{02} Q_{12}} .
$$

Divide $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$ by $Q_{12}, Q_{02}$ and $Q_{01}$ respectively to get

$$
\frac{s_{0}}{Q_{12}}=\frac{s_{1}}{Q_{02}}=\frac{s_{2}}{Q_{01}}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{12}},
$$

as required.
We will end this section by presenting a result that gives a relationship between the three $B$-spreads of a triangle, following the proof in [59, pp. 89-90] which was presented in the Euclidean setting.

Theorem 21 (Triple spread formula) For a triangle $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with $B$-spreads $s_{0}, s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$, we have the relation

$$
\left(s_{0}+s_{1}+s_{2}\right)^{2}=2\left(s_{0}^{2}+s_{1}^{2}+s_{2}^{2}\right)+4 s_{0} s_{1} s_{2} .
$$

Proof. From the result of the Spread law, let

$$
D \equiv \frac{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{12}}{\mathcal{A}}
$$

so that

$$
Q_{01}=D s_{2}, \quad Q_{02}=D s_{1} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12}=D s_{0}
$$

Given the Cross law

$$
\left(Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}=4 Q_{01} Q_{02}\left(1-s_{0}\right)
$$

we substitute our initial calculations and rearrange to get

$$
D^{2}\left(s_{0}+s_{1}-s_{2}\right)^{2}=4 D^{2} s_{0} s_{1}\left(1-s_{2}\right) .
$$

Divide by $D^{2}$ and rearrange this formula to obtain

$$
4 s_{0} s_{1}-\left(s_{0}+s_{1}-s_{2}\right)^{2}=4 s_{0} s_{1} s_{2}
$$

We use Archimedes' function to express this result as

$$
\left(s_{0}+s_{1}+s_{2}\right)^{2}-2\left(s_{0}^{2}+s_{1}^{2}+s_{2}^{2}\right)=4 s_{0} s_{1} s_{2}
$$

and rearrange to get

$$
\left(s_{0}+s_{1}+s_{2}\right)^{2}=2\left(s_{0}^{2}+s_{1}^{2}+s_{2}^{2}\right)+4 s_{0} s_{1} s_{2}
$$

By symmetry, we will obtain the same result when using the other two results from the Cross law.

In classical Euclidean trigonometry, the Triple spread formula corresponds to the fact that angles in a triangle sum up to two right angles, as propositioned and proven in Elements. Here, we are generalising such a result to arbitrary geometries, where this simple fact does not hold.

### 1.6.3 Projective rational trigonometry

Rational trigonometry has an affine and projective version. The projective version is typically more algebraically involved. The distinction was first laid out in [64] by framing hyperbolic geometry in a projective setting. So, the projective results are the essential formulas for the rational trigonometry approach to both hyperbolic and spherical/elliptic trigonometry. For us, the spherical/elliptic interpretation, as seen in Moritz [42] and Todhunter [53], is key.

An important consequence of projective geometry is that any statement made about projective points will also hold with regard to projective lines; this is the principle of duality explained by Coxeter [16, pp. 15-16], which is the idea that there is a symmetry in the roles of projective points and projective lines in the projective plane.

In what follows, we already have a symmetric bilinear form equipped on $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ with matrix representation

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

We define the $B$-projective quadrance between two projective points $p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right]$ and $p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right]$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ to be

$$
q_{B}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)}=\frac{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)} .
$$

Dually, we will define the $B$-projective spread, between two projective lines $L_{1} \equiv\left\langle n_{1}\right\rangle$
and $L_{2} \equiv\left\langle n_{2}\right\rangle$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ to be

$$
S_{B}\left(L_{1}, L_{2}\right) \equiv 1-\frac{\left(n_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} n_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(n_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{2}\right)}=\frac{Q_{B}\left(n_{1} \times_{B} n_{2}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(n_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{2}\right)} .
$$

It is important for us to observe the similarities in the definition of $B$-spread in affine rational trigonometry and the definition of $B$-projective quadrance above, as well as the similarities in the definition of $B$-dihedral spread and the definition of $B$-projective spread above. This is natural since projective points and lines can be associated with one-dimensional and two-dimensional subspaces of $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ respectively, and thus will also be associated with lines and planes in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ respectively.

### 1.6.4 Elementary results from projective rational trigonometry

We now proceed to present results in projective rational trigonometry, which draw on the results from [55] and [60], but will be framed in the three-dimensional framework using $B$-vector products and a general symmetric bilinear form.


Figure 1.8: Tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}$, and $B$-projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$ displayed

In what follows, we have three linearly independent vectors $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3} \in \mathbb{V}^{3}$ and take the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with projective points

$$
p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right], \quad p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right] \quad \text { and } \quad p_{3} \equiv\left[v_{3}\right] .
$$

The $B$-projective quadrances of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ are

$$
q_{12} \equiv q_{B}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right), \quad q_{13} \equiv q_{B}\left(p_{1}, p_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad q_{23} \equiv q_{B}\left(p_{2}, p_{3}\right)
$$

and the $B$-projective spreads are

$$
S_{1} \equiv S_{B}\left(p_{1} p_{2}, p_{1} p_{3}\right), \quad S_{2} \equiv S_{B}\left(p_{1} p_{2}, p_{2} p_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad S_{3} \equiv S_{B}\left(p_{1} p_{3}, p_{2} p_{3}\right) .
$$

We will also consider the $B$-dual tripod $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ of $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$, where

$$
r_{1} \equiv p_{2} \times_{B} p_{3}, \quad r_{2} \equiv p_{1} \times_{B} p_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad r_{3} \equiv p_{1} \times_{B} p_{2} .
$$

As a result of Proposition 11, the $B$-projective quadrances of $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ will be $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$, and the $B$-projective spreads of $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ will be $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}$. We illustrate the trigonometric quantities of $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ in Figure 1.8.

We now present a result regarding the ratio between $B$-projective spreads and $B$ projective quadrances.

Theorem 22 (Projective spread law) Given a tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}$, and $B$-projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$, we have the relation

$$
\frac{S_{1}}{q_{23}}=\frac{S_{2}}{q_{13}}=\frac{S_{3}}{q_{12}} .
$$

Proof. If the points of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ are given by

$$
p_{1} \equiv\left[v_{1}\right], \quad p_{2} \equiv\left[v_{2}\right] \quad \text { and } \quad p_{3} \equiv\left[v_{3}\right],
$$

we express the lines of it by

$$
p_{1} p_{2}=\left\langle n_{12}\right\rangle, \quad p_{1} p_{3}=\left\langle n_{13}\right\rangle \quad \text { and } \quad p_{2} p_{3}=\left\langle n_{23}\right\rangle,
$$

where

$$
n_{12} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}, \quad n_{13} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad n_{23} \equiv v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3} .
$$

Let $Q_{i} \equiv Q_{B}\left(v_{i}\right)$, for $i=1,2,3$, and

$$
N_{12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(n_{12}\right), \quad N_{13} \equiv Q_{B}\left(n_{13}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad N_{23} \equiv Q_{B}\left(n_{23}\right)
$$

From the definition of the $B$-projective quadrance,

$$
q_{12}=\frac{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)}=\frac{N_{12}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{1} Q_{2}}
$$

and similarly,

$$
q_{13}=\frac{N_{13}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{1} Q_{3}} \quad \text { and } \quad q_{23}=\frac{N_{23}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{2} Q_{3}} .
$$

From Corollary 8 and the definition of the $B$-projective spread,

$$
\begin{aligned}
S_{1} & =\frac{Q_{B}\left(n_{12} \times n_{13}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(n_{12}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{13}\right)} \\
& =\frac{Q_{B}\left((\operatorname{det} B)^{2}(\operatorname{det} M) v_{1}\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) N_{12} N_{13}} \\
& =\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} Q_{1}}{N_{12} N_{13}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly,

$$
S_{2}=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} Q_{2}}{N_{12} N_{23}} \quad \text { and } \quad S_{3}=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} Q_{3}}{N_{13} N_{23}}
$$

Hence, we deduce that

$$
\frac{S_{1}}{q_{23}}=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}}{N_{12} N_{13} N_{23}}=\frac{S_{2}}{q_{13}}=\frac{S_{3}}{q_{12}} .
$$

If we balance each side of the result of the Projective spread law to its lowest common denominator, multiplying through by the denominator motivates us to define the quantity

$$
q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}=q_{12} q_{23} S_{2}=q_{13} q_{23} S_{3} \equiv a_{B}\left(\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}\right) \equiv a_{B} .
$$

The quantity $a_{B}$ will be called the $B$-projective quadrea, of the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$.
There is a relationship between the $B$-projective quadrea and the $B$-projective quadrances of a tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ discovered in [55], which is central to our study of projective rational trigonometry. We extend this result to an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form, using quite a different argument.

Theorem 23 (Projective cross law) Given a tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}, B$-projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$, and $B$-projective quadrea $a_{B}$, the relation

$$
\left(a_{B}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}=4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)
$$

is satisfied.

Proof. Let $Q_{i} \equiv Q_{B}\left(v_{i}\right)$, for $i=1,2,3$. Use the Binet-Cauchy identity to get

$$
\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)=(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{3} \cdot B v_{3}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\right] .
$$

Square both sides to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right]^{2} } \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)^{2}\left[\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2} Q_{3}^{2}+\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)^{2}\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)^{2}-2\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) Q_{3}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

As

$$
S_{3}=1-\frac{\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right]^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times{ }_{B} v_{3}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)},
$$

we rearrange this equation to obtain

$$
\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \cdot{ }_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right]^{2}=Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\left(1-S_{3}\right) .
$$

Using Lagrange's identity, this becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \cdot{ }_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right]^{2} } & =(\operatorname{det} B)^{2}\left(Q_{1} Q_{3}-\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right)^{2}\right)\left(Q_{2} Q_{3}-\left(v_{2} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right)^{2}\right)\left(1-S_{3}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)^{2} Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}^{2}\left(1-\left(1-q_{13}\right)\right)\left(1-\left(1-q_{23}\right)\right)\left(1-S_{3}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)^{2} Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}^{2} q_{13} q_{23}\left(1-S_{3}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Equate this result with our initial result and rearrange to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2(\operatorname{det} B)^{2} Q_{3}\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right) \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)^{2}\left[Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}^{2}\left(1-q_{12}\right)+Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}^{2}\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)-Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}^{2} q_{13} q_{23}\left(1-S_{3}\right)\right] \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)^{2} Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}^{2}\left(S_{3} q_{13} q_{23}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Divide both sides by $(\operatorname{det} B)^{2} Q_{3}$ and then square each side to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q_{1}^{2} Q_{2}^{2} Q_{3}^{2}\left(S_{3} q_{13} q_{23}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2} \\
= & 4\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2}\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)^{2}\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)^{2} \\
= & 4 Q_{1}^{2} Q_{2}^{2} Q_{3}^{2}\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Divide both sides by $\left(Q_{1} Q_{2} Q_{3}\right)^{2}$ to get

$$
\left(S_{3} q_{13} q_{23}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}=4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)
$$

Since $a_{B}=S_{3} q_{13} q_{23}$, we end up with

$$
\left(a_{B}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}=4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)
$$

as required. If we started with the $B$-quadruple scalar product $\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)$ or $\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot{ }_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)$, we would arrive at the same result by symmetry.

The Projective cross law can also be expressed in various asymmetric forms.

Corollary 24 Given a tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}$, $q_{13}$ and $q_{23}$, and $B$-projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$, the Projective cross law can be rewritten as either

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}-q_{12}-q_{13}+q_{23}\right)^{2}=4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{23}\right)\left(1-S_{1}\right), \\
& \left(q_{12} q_{23} S_{2}-q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{23}\right)^{2}=4 q_{12} q_{23}\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-S_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

or

$$
\left(q_{13} q_{23} S_{3}+q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}\right)^{2}=4 q_{13} q_{23}\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-S_{3}\right)
$$

Proof. Substitute $a_{B}=S_{1} q_{12} q_{13}=\left(1-C_{1}\right) q_{12} q_{13}$ into the Projective cross law to get

$$
\left(\left(1-C_{1}\right) q_{12} q_{13}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}-4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)=0
$$

Expand the left-hand side and simplify the result as a polynomial in $C_{1}$ to obtain

$$
\left(q_{12}^{2} q_{13}^{2}\right) C_{1}^{2}+2 q_{12} q_{13}\left(q_{12}+q_{13}+q_{23}-q_{12} q_{13}-2\right) C_{1}+\left(q_{12} q_{13}-q_{12}-q_{13}+q_{23}\right)^{2}=0
$$

Add both sides by $4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{23}\right) C_{1}$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(q_{12}^{2} q_{13}^{2}\right) C_{1}^{2}+2 q_{12} q_{13}\left(q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{23}-q_{12} q_{13}\right) C_{1}+\left(q_{12} q_{13}-q_{12}-q_{13}+q_{23}\right)^{2} \\
= & 4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{23}\right) C_{1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

As the left-hand side is a perfect square, factorise this to get

$$
\left(q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{23}-q_{12} q_{13}+q_{12} q_{13} C_{1}\right)^{2}=4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{23}\right) C_{1} .
$$

Replace $C_{1}$ with $1-S_{1}$ and simplify to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{23}-q_{12} q_{13}+\left(1-S_{1}\right) q_{12} q_{13}\right)^{2} \\
= & \left(q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{23}-q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}\right)^{2}=4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{23}\right)\left(1-S_{1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.
Note that the $B$-projective quadrea $a_{B}$ also features in these asymmetric reformulation, and thus can replace the quantity $q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}$ (as well as its symmetrical reformulations).

In addition to the $B$-projective quadrea, we can also discuss the $B$-dual concept. This quantity is called the $B$-quadreal [64] and is defined by

$$
l_{B} \equiv l_{B}\left(\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}\right) \equiv q_{12} S_{1} S_{2}=q_{13} S_{1} S_{3}=q_{23} S_{2} S_{3} .
$$

We can also say from Corollary 8 that $l_{B}$ is the $B$-projective quadrea of the $B$-dual tripod $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$ of $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ and $a_{B}$ is the $B$-quadreal of $\overline{r_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}$. The following extends the result in [64] for $B$-quadratic forms.

Corollary 25 For a tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}, B$ projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}, B$-projective quadrea $a_{B}$ and $B$-quadreal $l_{B}$,

$$
a_{B} l_{B}=q_{12} q_{13} q_{23} S_{1} S_{2} S_{3} .
$$

Proof. Given

$$
a_{B}=q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}=q_{12} q_{23} S_{2}=q_{13} q_{23} S_{3}
$$

and

$$
l_{B}=q_{12} S_{1} S_{2}=q_{13} S_{1} S_{3}=q_{23} S_{2} S_{3},
$$

we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
a_{B} l_{B} & =\left(q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}\right)\left(q_{23} S_{2} S_{3}\right)=\left(q_{12} q_{23} S_{2}\right)\left(q_{13} S_{1} S_{3}\right) \\
& =\left(q_{13} q_{23} S_{3}\right)\left(q_{12} S_{1} S_{2}\right)=q_{12} q_{13} q_{23} S_{1} S_{2} S_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.
The Projective cross law leads us to two more important results, which extends the results from [55] to general symmetric bilinear forms.

Theorem 26 (Projective triple quad formula) Consider three projective points $p_{1}$, $p_{2}$ and $p_{3}$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2}$ with $B$-quadrances

$$
q_{12} \equiv q_{B}\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right), \quad q_{13} \equiv q_{B}\left(p_{1}, p_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad q_{23} \equiv q_{B}\left(p_{2}, p_{3}\right)
$$

If $p_{1}, p_{2}$ and $p_{3}$ are collinear, then

$$
\left(q_{12}+q_{13}+q_{23}\right)^{2}=2\left(q_{12}^{2}+q_{13}^{2}+q_{23}^{2}\right)+4 q_{12} q_{13} q_{23}
$$

Proof. We start with the following result of the Projective cross law on the tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ :

$$
\left(a-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}=4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)
$$

If $p_{1}, p_{2}$ and $p_{3}$ are collinear, then

$$
S_{1}=S_{2}=S_{3}=0
$$

By the definition of the $B$-projective quadrea, $a_{B}=0$ and thus substitute this result into our initial relation to get

$$
\left(2-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}\right)^{2}=4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)
$$

By moving all the terms on the right-hand side over to the other side, we simplify the expression to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =q_{12}^{2}+q_{13}^{2}+q_{23}^{2}-2 q_{12} q_{13}-2 q_{12} q_{23}-2 q_{13} q_{23}+4 q_{12} q_{13} q_{23} \\
& =2\left(q_{12}^{2}+q_{13}^{2}+q_{23}^{2}\right)-\left(q_{12}+q_{13}+q_{23}\right)^{2}+4 q_{12} q_{13} q_{23}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, rearrange to get the required result.
The Projective triple quad formula is analogous and parallel to the Triple spread formula in affine rational trigonometry. This is no coincidence, since the $B$-projective quadrance between two projective points is associated with the $B$-spread between two lines in affine rational trigonometry.

We now present the second result, which is a projective version of Pythagoras' theorem. This is an extension of the result in [55], [60] and [64] to arbitrary symmetric bilinear forms.

Theorem 27 (Projective Pythagoras' theorem) Take a tripod $\overline{p_{1} p_{2} p_{3}}$ with $B$-projective quadrances $q_{12}, q_{13}$ and $q_{23}$, and B-projective spreads $S_{1}, S_{2}$ and $S_{3}$. If $S_{1}=1$, then

$$
q_{23}=q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{12} q_{13} .
$$

Proof. Start with the Projective cross law

$$
\left(q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}=4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right) .
$$

Substitute $S_{1}=1$ and rearrange the result to get

$$
\left(q_{12} q_{13}-q_{12}-q_{13}-q_{23}+2\right)^{2}-4\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-q_{23}\right)=0 .
$$

The left-hand side can be factored as

$$
\left(q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{23}-q_{12} q_{13}\right)^{2}=0
$$

Solving for $q_{23}$, we get

$$
q_{23}=q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{12} q_{13} .
$$

Note the cross term $-q_{12} q_{13}$ involved in the Projective Pythagoras' theorem; this is not present in Pythagoras' theorem in affine rational trigonometry. As observed in [64], the Projective Pythagoras' theorem can be restated as

$$
\begin{aligned}
1-q_{23} & =1-q_{12}-q_{13}+q_{12} q_{13} \\
& =\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

As for the converse of the Projective Pythagoras' theorem, start with the asymmetric form of the Projective cross law

$$
\left(q_{12} q_{13} S_{1}-q_{12}-q_{13}+q_{23}\right)^{2}=4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{23}\right)\left(1-S_{1}\right) .
$$

If $q_{23}=q_{12}+q_{13}-q_{12} q_{13}$ then we have that

$$
\left(q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-S_{1}\right)\right)^{2}=4 q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-q_{12}\right)\left(1-q_{13}\right)\left(1-S_{1}\right),
$$

which can also be rearranged and factorised as

$$
q_{12} q_{13}\left(1-S_{1}\right)\left(4 q_{12}+4 q_{13}-3 q_{12} q_{13}-S_{1} q_{12} q_{13}-4\right)=0
$$

Here, we see that $S_{1}=1$ is not the only solution; we can also have the solution

$$
S_{1}=\frac{4\left(q_{12}+q_{13}-1\right)}{q_{12} q_{13}}-3 .
$$

So, the converse of the Projective Pythagoras' theorem may not necessarily hold.

## Chapter 2

## Trigonometry of the tetrahedron

In this chapter, we begin to analyse our main object of interest: a general tetrahedron. Here, we consider the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, where

$$
A_{0} \equiv\left[x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right], \quad A_{1} \equiv\left[x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right], \quad A_{2} \equiv\left[x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right] \quad \text { and } \quad A_{3} \equiv\left[x_{3}, y_{3}, z_{3}\right]
$$

are its points. The lines, planes, sides, triangles, vertices and corners of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ have already been defined in the last chapter and are available to us.

We equip $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ with a non-degenerate symmetric bilinear form and represent this with the matrix

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

as before

### 2.1 The Khafre Tetrahedron

We start with a historical example of a tetrahedron. The Khafre Pyramid at Giza, Egypt [44], pictured in Figure 2.1, is the second and central of the three pyramids and the one with the Sphinx in front of it. It has a base width of 411 cubits (approx. 216 metres) and a height of 274 cubits (approx. 143 metres) [20].

Noted by Gillings [23, p. 212] and Claggett [13, p. 90], the steepness of such a pyramid was described by the ancient Egyptians using the important ratio of run over rise, or seqed as the Egyptians called it, which in this case is

$$
\frac{205.5}{274}=\frac{5.25}{7}=\frac{3}{4} .
$$

This is indeed exactly 5 palms and 1 finger per cubit, as the Egyptians divided a cubit into 7 palms, and a palm into 4 fingers. The seqed was used by the Egyptians rather than slope or angle to measure steepness of a pyramid, and would have aided construction workers to ensure that the sides of the pyramid were inclined equally as it was being built.


Figure 2.1: The Khafre pyramid at Giza [32]

The quantity computed is the ratio $\frac{|O R|}{|O P|}$ in Figure 2.2, which has been suitably rescaled to make the crucial 3-4-5 triangle more visible.


Figure 2.2: Geometry of the Khafre pyramid and tetrahedron with rescaled lengths
There is some remarkable geometry in this structure, some of which can be captured by the tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$ formed from the base triangle $\overline{O R A}$, where $O$ is the center of the base, $R$ the midpoint of the side $\overline{A D}$ of the base, and $P$ the apex of the pyramid. We will call this tetrahedron the Khafre tetrahedron. This tetrahedron is nowhere near a general one; for example, it has all four of its faces as right triangles in the Euclidean sense, one of which (the base triangle) being also isosceles. Nevertheless we will see that we can use it to illustrate many of the relations that hold for a general tetrahedron as we progress through the thesis. When we discuss it, we will be using the standard Euclidean bilinear form, i.e. we set $B$ to be the $3 \times 3$ identity matrix. By doing this, we are thus allowed to omit the $B$ which is prefixed to any trigonometric quantity pertaining to the Khafre tetrahedron.

We use the diagram to establish coordinates. If we take $O$ to be the origin of a
coordinate system, with $O R$ forming the $x$-axis, $O P$ forming the $z$-axis, and the $y$-axis otherwise perpendicular to both, then we can define the points to be

$$
O \equiv[0,0,0], \quad R \equiv[3,0,0], \quad A \equiv[3,3,0] \quad \text { and } \quad P \equiv[0,0,4] .
$$

The signed volume of $\overline{O R A P}$ is

$$
v(\overrightarrow{O R}, \overrightarrow{O A}, \overrightarrow{O P})=\frac{1}{6} \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 4
\end{array}\right)=6
$$

The quadrume of $\overline{O R A P}$ is then

$$
\mathcal{V}=144 \times 6^{2}=5184
$$

We can convert the length readings of the Khafre tetrahedron in Figure 2.2 to obtain its quadrances, which are

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{O R}=9, \quad Q_{O A}=18, \quad Q_{O P}=16, \\
Q_{A P}=34, \quad Q_{R P}=25 \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{R A}=9 .
\end{gathered}
$$

We see that Pythagoras' theorem allows us to easily determine all six quadrances (as seen in Figure 2.3), since all the triangles of the Khafre tetrahedron are right triangles in the Euclidean sense.


Figure 2.3: Quadrances of the Khafre tetrahedron
Denoting the triangles/faces of the Khafre tetrahedron by $\overline{O R A}, \overline{O R P}, \overline{O A P}$ and $\overline{A R P}$, the quadreas associated to them them will be denoted by and are evaluated as

$$
\mathcal{A}_{O R A}=324, \quad \mathcal{A}_{O R P}=576, \quad \mathcal{A}_{O A P}=1152 \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{A R P}=900 .
$$

Since all the triangles are right-angled, we know that one of the spreads on each triangle
is 1 . If we define $s_{O ; A R} \equiv s(O A, O R), s_{O ; A P} \equiv s(O A, O P)$, etc, then the spreads of the triangles $\overline{O R A}, \overline{O R P}, \overline{O A P}$ and $\overline{A R P}$ can be evaluated by the Quadrea spread theorem as

$$
\begin{gathered}
s_{O ; R A}=\frac{1}{2}, \quad s_{R ; O A}=1, \quad s_{A ; O R}=\frac{1}{2} \\
s_{O ; R P}=1, \quad s_{R ; O P}=\frac{16}{25}, \quad s_{P ; O R}=\frac{9}{25} \\
s_{O ; A P}=1, \quad s_{A ; O P}=\frac{8}{17}, \quad s_{P ; O A}=\frac{9}{17} \\
s_{A ; R P}=\frac{25}{34}, \quad s_{R ; A P}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad s_{P ; A R}=\frac{9}{34}
\end{gathered}
$$

In the next section, we will compute the other quantities associated to the Khafre tetrahedron, with a view of using it as a particularly simple test example to verify the results we will obtain.

### 2.2 The dihedral, solid and dual solid spreads



Figure 2.4: $B$-quadrances of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$
In what follows, we consider the general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ defined earlier, as in Figure 2.4. In this tetrahedron, the $B$-quadrances will be denoted by $Q_{i j} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{i}, A_{j}\right)$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$. The $B$-quadreas of the triangles of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ will be denoted by

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{013} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{023} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{A}_{123} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)
$$

The $B$-quadrume of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is denoted by $\mathcal{V} \equiv \mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right)$. Furthermore, we will denote $s_{i ; j k}$ to be the $B$-spread between the lines $A_{i} A_{j}$ and $A_{i} A_{k}$ of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, for $0 \leq i \leq 3$ and $0 \leq j<k \leq 3$ not equal to $i$. In this section, we present methods for calculating the $B$-dihedral spreads, $B$-solid spreads and $B$-dual solid spreads of a tetrahedron.

### 2.2.1 Dihedral spreads

Given the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, we will denote the $B$-dihedral spreads by

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{01} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}\right), \quad E_{23} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \\
E_{02} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \quad E_{13} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \\
E_{03} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad E_{12} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

We show a visual representation of the $B$-dihedral spreads in Figure 2.5. We can associate


Figure 2.5: $B$-dihedral spreads of tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$
the $B$-dihedral spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to its edges, since any two planes of the tetrahedron will meet at one of its lines. The $B$-dihedral crosses will be denoted similarly, i.e. $C_{i j} \equiv$ $1-E_{i j}$ for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$. With that in mind, we present a simpler method for calculating the $B$-dihedral spreads of a tetrahedron by extending a result of [63].

Theorem 28 (Dihedral spread theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{i j}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, B-quadreas $\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{123}$, and $B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V}$, the $B$-dihedral spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are expressed as

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{01} & =\frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}, \quad E_{23}=\frac{4 Q_{23} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} \\
E_{02} & =\frac{4 Q_{02} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023}}, \quad E_{13}=\frac{4 Q_{13} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}}, \\
E_{03} & =\frac{4 Q_{03} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023}} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{12}=\frac{4 Q_{12} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. Let $v_{1} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1}}, v_{2} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{2}}$ and $v_{3} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{3}}$, so that the $B$-normal vectors to the respective planes $A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}$ and $A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}$ are $v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}$ and $v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}$. By Lagrange's identity
and the definition of the $B$-dihedral spread,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{01} & =1-\frac{\left(\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left(v_{1} \times{ }_{B} v_{3}\right)\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)} \\
& =\frac{Q_{B}\left(\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right)}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Quadrea theorem,

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012}=\frac{4 Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)}{\operatorname{det} B} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{013}=\frac{4 Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)}{\operatorname{det} B} .
$$

Hence,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) & =(\operatorname{det} B)\left(\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{A}_{012}}{4}\right)\left(\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{A}_{013}}{4}\right) \\
& =\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3} \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}{16} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, consider the matrix

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right) .
$$

From Corollary 8,

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{B}\left(\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right) & =Q_{B}\left(\left[(\operatorname{det} B)^{2}(\operatorname{det} M)\right] v_{1}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} Q_{01} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Quadrume matrix product theorem,

$$
Q_{B}\left(\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right)=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3} Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{4}
$$

and thus

$$
E_{01}=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3} Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{4} \div \frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{3} \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}{16}=\frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.
The $B$-dihedral spread, a metrical affine quantity, can be viewed projectively as the $B$ projective spread between two projective lines. We now proceed to computing the dihedral spreads and crosses of the Khafre tetrahedron.

Example 29 (Dihedral spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron) For the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$ defined earlier, the dihedral spreads are denoted and evaluated by the Di-
hedral spread theorem as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{O R}=\frac{4 Q_{O R} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A R} \mathcal{A}_{O R P}}=\frac{4 \times 9 \times 5184}{324 \times 576}=1, \\
& E_{O A}=\frac{4 Q_{O A} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A R} \mathcal{A}_{O A P}}=\frac{4 \times 18 \times 5184}{324 \times 1152}=1, \\
& E_{O P}=\frac{4 Q_{O P} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{O R P}}=\frac{4 \times 16 \times 5184}{1152 \times 576}=\frac{1}{2}, \\
& E_{R A}=\frac{4 Q_{A R} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A R} \mathcal{A}_{A R P}}=\frac{4 \times 9 \times 5184}{900 \times 324}=\frac{16}{25}, \\
& E_{R P}=\frac{4 Q_{R P} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{O R P} \mathcal{A}_{A R P}}=\frac{4 \times 25 \times 5184}{900 \times 576}=1
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
E_{A P}=\frac{4 Q_{A P} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{A R P}}=\frac{4 \times 34 \times 5184}{1152 \times 900}=\frac{17}{25}
$$

We illustrate this in Figure 2.6, where the right angles on the edges denote that the dihedral spread is equal to 1.


Figure 2.6: Dihedral spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron

Example 30 (Dihedral crosses of the Khafre tetrahedron) Since the dihedral crosses are given by $C_{i j}=1-E_{i j}$, for distinct points $i$ and $j$ of the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$, we have that

$$
\begin{gathered}
C_{O A}=0, \quad C_{O R}=0, \quad C_{O P}=\frac{1}{2}, \\
C_{R P}=0, \quad C_{A P}=\frac{8}{25} \quad \text { and } \quad C_{A R}=\frac{9}{25} .
\end{gathered}
$$

### 2.2.2 Solid spreads

The $B$-solid spreads of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are denoted by

$$
\mathcal{S}_{0} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{0} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{3}\right), \quad \mathcal{S}_{1} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{3}\right)
$$

$$
\mathcal{S}_{2} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{3}, A_{2} A_{3}\right),
$$

and are displayed in Figure 2.7. So we associate a $B$-solid spread to each corner of


Figure 2.7: $B$-solid spreads of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$
$\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, and we can compute the $B$-solid spread for a tetrahedron using only our trigonometric quantities, as seen in the following two results, based on [63].

In our first result, we express the $B$-solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ explicitly in terms of its $B$-quadrances and $B$-quadrume.

Theorem 31 (Solid spread theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{i j}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, and $B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V}$, the $B$-solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are expressed as

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{S}_{0}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{1}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{12} Q_{13}}, \\
\mathcal{S}_{2}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{02} Q_{12} Q_{23}} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{03} Q_{13} Q_{23}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Proof. Let $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ be the respective direction vectors of $A_{0} A_{1}, A_{0} A_{2}$ and $A_{0} A_{3}$, and define

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Using the Quadrume matrix product theorem, the definition of $B$-solid spread and the Scalar triple product theorem to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{S}_{0} & =\frac{\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B}\right)^{2}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{3}\right)} \\
& =\frac{(\operatorname{det}(M B))^{2}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}} \\
& =\frac{\operatorname{det}\left(M B M^{T}\right)}{Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}} \\
& =\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.
Alternatively, we can express the $B$-solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in terms of its $B$ spreads and $B$-dihedral spreads. We will call this theorem the Solid spread projective theorem, because of the similarities of the result with other results in projective geometry (which we will explain later).

Theorem 32 (Solid spread projective theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-spreads $s_{i ; j k}$, for $i=0,1,2,3$ and $0 \leq j<k \leq 3$ with $j, k \neq i$, and $B$-dihedral spreads $E_{i j}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, the $B$-solid spreads are expressed as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{S}_{0}=E_{01} s_{0 ; 12} s_{0 ; 13}=E_{02} s_{0 ; 12} s_{0 ; 23}=E_{03} s_{0 ; 13} s_{0 ; 23}, \\
& \mathcal{S}_{1}=E_{01} s_{1 ; 02} s_{1 ; 03}=E_{12} s_{1 ; 02} s_{1 ; 23}=E_{13} s_{1 ; 03} s_{1 ; 23} \\
& \mathcal{S}_{2}=E_{02} s_{2 ; 01} s_{2 ; 03}=E_{12} s_{2 ; 01} s_{2 ; 13}=E_{23} s_{2 ; 03} s_{2 ; 13}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{S}_{3}=E_{03} s_{3 ; 01} s_{3 ; 02}=E_{13} s_{3 ; 01} s_{2 ; 12}=E_{23} s_{3 ; 02} s_{2 ; 12}
$$

Proof. Given the $B$-quadrances, $B$-quadreas and $B$-quadrume of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, use the Quadrea spread theorem and the Dihedral spread theorem to obtain

$$
s_{0 ; 12}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{012}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02}}, \quad s_{0 ; 13}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{013}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{03}} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{01}=\frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}
$$

So,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{01} s_{0 ; 12} s_{0 ; 13} & =\frac{\mathcal{A}_{012}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02}} \frac{\mathcal{A}_{013}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{03}} \frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}} \\
& =\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which by the Solid spread theorem is equal to $\mathcal{S}_{0}$, as required. The other results follow by symmetry.

From the Solid spread projective theorem, the $B$-solid spread can be viewed projectively as the $B$-projective quadrea of a tripod given by three projective points. We now proceed to calculating the solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron.

Example 33 (Solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron) By the Solid spread theorem, the solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$ are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{S}_{O}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{O A} Q_{O R} Q_{O P}}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 18 \times 9 \times 16}=\frac{1}{2}, \\
& \mathcal{S}_{R}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{O R} Q_{A R} Q_{P R}}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 9 \times 9 \times 25}=\frac{16}{25}, \\
& \mathcal{S}_{A}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{O A} Q_{A R} Q_{P A}}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 18 \times 9 \times 34}=\frac{4}{17}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{S}_{P}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{O P} Q_{P A} Q_{P R}}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 16 \times 34 \times 25}=\frac{81}{850} .
$$

The Solid spread projective theorem can also be used to obtain the same values for the solid spreads, given the spreads and dihedral spreads of $\overline{O R A P}$. We illustrate the solid spreads of $\overline{O R A P}$ in Figure 2.8.


Figure 2.8: Solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron

### 2.2.3 Dual solid spreads

The $B$-dual solid spreads of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ will be denoted by

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{D}_{0} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{0} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{3}\right), \quad \mathcal{D}_{1} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{3}\right), \\
\mathcal{D}_{2} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{3}, A_{2} A_{3}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

They are displayed in Figure 2.9. As is the case with $B$-solid spreads, we associate the


Figure 2.9: $B$-dual solid spreads of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$
$B$-dual solid spread to each corner of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, which can be calculated simply by the
following two results. In the first one, we express the $B$-dual solid spread of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ explicitly in terms of its $B$-quadreas and $B$-quadrume.

Theorem 34 (Dual solid spread theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadreas $\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{123}$, and B-quadrume $\mathcal{V}$, the $B$-dual solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are expressed as

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}}, \quad \mathcal{D}_{1}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}}, \\
\mathcal{D}_{2}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Proof. Suppose the direction vectors of $l_{1}, l_{2}$ and $l_{3}$ are $v_{1}, v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ respectively; also define three concurrent lines $k_{12}, k_{13}$ and $k_{23}$ with direction vectors

$$
n_{12} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}, \quad n_{13} \equiv v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad n_{23} \equiv v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3} .
$$

Use the definition of the $B$-dual solid spread to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{D}_{B}\left(l_{1}, l_{2}, l_{3}\right) & =\mathcal{S}_{B}\left(k_{12}, k_{13}, k_{23}\right) \\
& =\frac{\left(\left[n_{12}, n_{13}, n_{23}\right]_{B}\right)^{2}}{(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(n_{12}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{13}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{23}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Given the definitions of $n_{12}, n_{13}$ and $n_{23}$, use the definition of the $B$-quadrea to deduce that

$$
Q_{B}\left(n_{12}\right)=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{A}_{012}}{4}, \quad Q_{B}\left(n_{13}\right)=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{A}_{013}}{4} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{B}\left(n_{23}\right)=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{A}_{023}}{4} .
$$

Hence,

$$
(\operatorname{det} B) Q_{B}\left(n_{12}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{13}\right) Q_{B}\left(n_{23}\right)=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}}{64} \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}
$$

By the definition of the scalar triple product, expand $\left[n_{12}, n_{13}, n_{23}\right]_{B}$ using the definitions of $n_{12}, n_{13}$ and $n_{23}$ as

$$
\left[n_{12}, n_{13}, n_{23}\right]_{B}=\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot{ }_{B}\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right) \times_{B}\left(v_{2} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right] .
$$

Define

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{lll}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right)
$$

so that by the Quadruple vector product theorem and the Scalar triple product theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[n_{12}, n_{13}, n_{23}\right]_{B} } & =\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B(\operatorname{det} B)\left(\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{3}\right]_{B} v_{2}-\left[v_{1}, v_{3}, v_{2}\right]_{B} v_{3}\right) \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot B\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B} v_{3}\right] \\
& =(\operatorname{det} M)(\operatorname{det} B)^{2}\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B}=(\operatorname{det} M)^{2}(\operatorname{det} B)^{3} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Quadrume matrix product theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\left[n_{12}, n_{13}, n_{23}\right]_{B}\right)^{2} & =(\operatorname{det} M)^{4}(\operatorname{det} B)^{6}=(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}\left[(\operatorname{det} M)^{4}(\operatorname{det} B)^{2}\right] \\
& =(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}\left(\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4}\right)^{2}=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{4}}{16} \mathcal{V}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

So,

$$
\mathcal{D}_{B}\left(l_{01}, l_{02}, l_{03}\right)=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{4} \mathcal{V}^{2}}{16} \div \frac{(\operatorname{det} B)^{4} \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}}{64}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}} .
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.
Next we use the $B$-spreads and $B$-dihedral spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to alternatively express its $B$-dual solid spreads. We will call this the Dual solid spread projective theorem for the same reasons as in the case of the Solid spread projective theorem.

Theorem 35 (Dual solid spread projective theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-spreads $s_{i ; j k}$, for $0 \leq i \leq 3$ and $0 \leq j<k \leq 3$ with $j, k \neq i$, and $B$-dihedral spreads $E_{i j}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, the $B$-dual solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are expressed as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{D}_{0}=s_{0 ; 12} E_{01} E_{02}=s_{0 ; 13} E_{01} E_{03}=s_{0 ; 23} E_{02} E_{03}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{1}=s_{1 ; 02} E_{01} E_{12}=s_{1 ; 03} E_{01} E_{13}=s_{1 ; 23} E_{12} E_{13}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{2}=s_{2 ; 01} E_{02} E_{12}=s_{2 ; 03} E_{02} E_{23}=s_{2 ; 13} E_{12} E_{23}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{D}_{3}=s_{3 ; 01} E_{03} E_{13}=s_{3 ; 02} E_{03} E_{23}=s_{3 ; 12} E_{13} E_{23}
$$

Proof. By the Dihedral spread theorem and the Quadrea spread theorem, we have that

$$
s_{0,12} E_{01} E_{02}=\left(\frac{\mathcal{A}_{012}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02}}\right)\left(\frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}}\right)\left(\frac{4 Q_{02} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023}}\right)=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}}
$$

which, by the Dual solid spread theorem, is $\mathcal{D}_{0}$, as required. By symmetry, all the other results hold.

The Dual solid spread projective theorem tells us that the $B$-dual solid spread, a metrical affine quantity, is analogous to the $B$-quadreal of a tripod. We now proceed to compute the dual solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron.

Example 36 (Dual solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron) By the Dual solid spread theorem, the dual solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{\text { ORAP }}$ are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{D}_{O}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A R} \mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{O R P}}=\frac{4 \times(5184)^{2}}{324 \times 1152 \times 576}=\frac{1}{2}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{R}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A R} \mathcal{A}_{O R P} \mathcal{A}_{A R P}}=\frac{4 \times(5184)^{2}}{324 \times 576 \times 900}=\frac{16}{25},
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\mathcal{D}_{A}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A R} \mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{A R P}}=\frac{4 \times(5184)^{2}}{324 \times 1152 \times 900}=\frac{8}{25}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{D}_{P}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{O R P} \mathcal{A}_{A R P}}=\frac{4 \times(5184)^{2}}{1152 \times 576 \times 900}=\frac{9}{50} .
$$

We can also use the Dual solid spread projective theorem to arrive at the same answer, given we know the spreads and dihedral spreads of $\overline{O R A P}$. We display the dual solid spreads of $\overline{O R A P}$ in Figure 2.10.


Figure 2.10: Dual solid spreads of the Khafre tetrahedron

### 2.3 Ratio theorems of a general tetrahedron

Here, we present some results with regards to ratios present in a tetrahedron. We consider the general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ along with all the trigonometric quantities defined in this chapter and in the previous chapter.

Firstly, we have a ratio theorem that gives a correspondence between products of opposing $B$-dihedral spreads and opposing $B$-quadrances, based on a result of Richardson [45] in the classical case.

Theorem 37 (Dihedral spread ratio theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$ quadrances $Q_{i j}$, B-quadreas $\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{123}, B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V}$ and $B$-dihedral spreads $E_{i j}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, the relation

$$
\frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=\frac{1}{K}
$$

is satisfied, where

$$
K \equiv \frac{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}}{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}
$$

Proof. By the Dihedral spread theorem,

$$
E_{01} E_{23}=\frac{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} Q_{01} Q_{23},
$$

$$
E_{02} E_{13}=\frac{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} Q_{02} Q_{13}
$$

and

$$
E_{03} E_{12}=\frac{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}} Q_{03} Q_{12}
$$

Letting

$$
K=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}}{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}},
$$

we then have

$$
\frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=\frac{1}{K},
$$

as required.
The quantity

$$
K \equiv \frac{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}}{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}
$$

is of importance in Richardson's paper [45] and has some significance for the study of the trigonometry of a general tetrahedron. We will call the constant $K$ the Richardson number, which is named after the author of the cited paper. An immediate application of this is seen in the following result, which is an extension of another result of Richardson [45].

Theorem 38 (Dual solid spread ratio theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadreas $\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{123}, B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V}$, $B$-dual solid spreads $\mathcal{D}_{0}, \mathcal{D}_{1}, \mathcal{D}_{2}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{3}$, and Richardson number $K$, the relation

$$
\frac{\mathcal{D}_{0}}{\mathcal{A}_{123}}=\frac{\mathcal{D}_{1}}{\mathcal{A}_{023}}=\frac{\mathcal{D}_{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{013}}=\frac{\mathcal{D}_{3}}{\mathcal{A}_{012}}=\frac{1}{4 K}
$$

is satisfied.
Proof. By the Dual solid spread theorem,

$$
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}} .
$$

Divide through by $\mathcal{A}_{123}$ to get

$$
\frac{\mathcal{D}_{0}}{\mathcal{A}_{123}}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} \mathcal{A}_{123}}=\frac{1}{4 K},
$$

as required. The other results follow by symmetry.
A key consequence of this result is that a statement involving $B$-quadreas can also be equally applied to $B$-dual solid spreads, after taking into account the factor of $4 K$. We will apply this in the next chapter.

Example 39 (Ratio theorems for Khafre tetrahedron) For the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$, we have

$$
\frac{E_{O R} E_{A P}}{Q_{O R} Q_{A P}}=\frac{17}{25 \times 9 \times 34}=\frac{1}{450},
$$

$$
\frac{E_{O A} E_{R P}}{Q_{O A} Q_{R P}}=\frac{1}{25 \times 18}=\frac{1}{450}
$$

and

$$
\frac{E_{O P} E_{A R}}{Q_{O P} Q_{A R}}=\frac{16}{50 \times 9 \times 16}=\frac{1}{450} .
$$

Since

$$
\frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=\frac{1}{450}
$$

the Dihedral spread ratio theorem holds. Furthermore, we compute Richardson's number from the result of the Dihedral spread ratio theorem to be

$$
K=450
$$

Given the quadreas of the Khafre tetrahedron are known, we use the Dual solid spread ratio theorem to deduce that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{D}_{O}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{A R P}}{4 K}=\frac{900}{4 \times 450}=\frac{1}{2}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{R}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{O A P}}{4 K}=\frac{1152}{4 \times 450}=\frac{16}{25}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{A}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{O R P}}{4 K}=\frac{576}{4 \times 450}=\frac{8}{25}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{D}_{P}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{O A R}}{4 K}=\frac{324}{4 \times 450}=\frac{9}{50} .
$$

Since these are the same quantities obtained by the Dual solid spread theorem, the Dual solid spread ratio theorem holds.

### 2.4 Skew quadrances of a tetrahedron

In this section, we aim to calculate the $B$-quadrances between opposite edges of a general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$. This is a secondary trigonometric invariant, but can prove quite useful at times. Again, we assume that all the quantities of the tetrahedron have been previously defined for us to use without recall.

Two non-parallel lines in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ are skew if they do not intersect. Two lines $A B$ and $C D$, each with linearly independent direction vectors, are skew precisely when the points $A$, $B, C$ and $D$ are not coplanar, as seen in Hilbert and Cohn-Vossen [28, pp. 13-17]. Ideally this happens when $\overline{A B C D}$ is a non-null tetrahedron, i.e. when the quadrances of $\overline{A B C D}$ are all non-zero.

We will define the $B$-skew quadrance between two lines $l$ and $m$ with respective direction vectors $u$ and $v$ to be

$$
Q_{B}(l, m) \equiv Q_{B}\left(\left(\operatorname{proj}_{u \times_{B} v} \overrightarrow{L M}\right)_{B}\right)
$$

for arbitrary points $L$ on $l$ and $M$ on $m$. If $l$ and $m$ are skew, then these two lines lie
on parallel planes, both with common $B$-normal vectors $u \times_{B} v$. This quantity is thus invariant under selection of $L$ and $M$. Note that we have previously defined

$$
\left(\operatorname{proj}_{u} v\right)_{B}=\left(\frac{u \cdot B v}{u \cdot B u}\right) u .
$$

The following result, proven synthetically in the classical case by Richardson [45] and in more detail by Smith and Henderson [46] in the classical case as well, gives us the $B$-skew quadrances of the tetrahedron.

Theorem 40 (Skew quadrance theorem) For a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadrances $Q_{i j}$ and $B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V}$, suppose

$$
R_{01 ; 23} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{2} A_{3}\right), \quad R_{02 ; 13} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{3}\right)
$$

and

$$
R_{03 ; 12} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2}\right)
$$

are the three $B$-skew quadrances of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{01 ; 23} & =\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{23}-\left(Q_{02}+Q_{13}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}} \\
R_{02 ; 13} & =\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{02} Q_{13}-\left(Q_{01}+Q_{23}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
R_{03 ; 12}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{02} Q_{13}-\left(Q_{01}+Q_{23}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}}
$$

Proof. Let $v_{i} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{i}}$, for $i=1,2,3$, and define

$$
n \equiv v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right) .
$$

By definition, $R_{01 ; 23}$ is given by the projection of a vector from one point on $A_{0} A_{1}$ to another point on $A_{2} A_{3}$ in the direction of $n$. It is convenient for us to choose the points $B_{0}$ and $B_{2}$, so that we can set $R_{01 ; 23} \equiv Q_{B}(w)$, where

$$
w \equiv\left(\operatorname{proj}_{n} v_{2}\right)_{B} .
$$

So,

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{01 ; 23} & =Q_{B}\left(\frac{v_{2} \cdot B}{Q_{B}(n)} n\right) \\
& =\frac{\left(v_{2} \cdot B\left[v_{1} \times B\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right]\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times B\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We define

$$
M \equiv\left(\begin{array}{lll}
- & v_{1} & - \\
- & v_{2} & - \\
- & v_{3} & -
\end{array}\right),
$$

so that by the Scalar triple product theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(v_{2} \cdot B\left[v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right]\right)^{2} \\
= & \left(v_{2} \cdot B\left[\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)-\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right)\right]\right)^{2} \\
= & \left(\left[v_{2}, v_{1}, v_{3}\right]_{B}-\left[v_{2}, v_{1}, v_{2}\right]_{B}\right)^{2} \\
= & {\left[v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}\right]_{B}^{2} } \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)^{2}(\operatorname{det} M)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Quadrume matrix product theorem,

$$
\left(v_{2} \cdot B\left[v_{1} \times{ }_{B}\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right]\right)^{2}=\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{V}}{4}
$$

We now use Lagrange's identity to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right) \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)\left[Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right)^{2}\right] \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)\left[Q_{01} Q_{23}-\left(v_{1} \cdot B\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right)^{2}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Given that

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{1} \cdot B\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right) & =\left(v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right) \\
& =\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{03}-Q_{13}}{2}-\frac{Q_{01}+Q_{02}-Q_{12}}{2} \\
& =-\frac{1}{2}\left(Q_{02}+Q_{13}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B}\left(v_{3}-v_{2}\right)\right) \\
= & (\operatorname{det} B)\left[Q_{01} Q_{23}-\frac{\left(Q_{02}+Q_{13}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}}{4}\right] \\
= & \frac{\operatorname{det} B}{4}\left[4 Q_{01} Q_{23}-\left(Q_{02}+Q_{13}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

So,

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{01 ; 23} & =\frac{(\operatorname{det} B) \mathcal{V}}{4} \times \frac{\operatorname{det} B}{4}\left[4 Q_{01} Q_{23}-\left(Q_{02}+Q_{13}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{23}-\left(Q_{02}+Q_{13}-Q_{03}-Q_{12}\right)^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The other results follow by symmetry.


Figure 2.11: $B$-skew quadrances of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$
Figure 2.11 shows the $B$-skew quadrances present in a general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$. It is also interesting for us to note that the denominator of our result is a rational form of Bretschneider's formula as seen in Bretschneider [6] and Coolidge [15], for the quadrea of a general quadrangle (a collection of four coplanar points) in terms of the six quadrances between any two of its points [68].

Example 41 (Skew quadrances of Khafre tetrahedron) For the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$, the skew quadrances between pairs of opposite lines of them are, by the Skew quadrance theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{O A ; R P}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 18 \times 25-(9+34-16-9)^{2}}=\frac{144}{41}, \\
& R_{O R ; A P}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 9 \times 34-(18+25-16-9)^{2}}=\frac{144}{25}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
R_{O P ; A R}=\frac{5184}{4 \times 16 \times 9-(18+25-9-34)^{2}}=9
$$

We display these skew quadrances in Figure 2.12 for the Khafre tetrahedron.


Figure 2.12: Skew quadrances of Khafre tetrahedron

## Chapter 3

## The Standard tetrahedron and its applications

This idea of using standard coordinates and a variable quadratic form to study general triangle geometry and trigonometry was developed in the hyperbolic case by Alkhaldi and Wildberger [67]. In Nguyen Le's doctoral thesis [35], she sets up a framework of affine triangle geometry by considering what is called a Standard triangle; the idea is to replace the study of a general triangle over a specific quadratic form with the study of a specific triangle over a general quadratic form. We draw motivation from the aforementioned ideas to create a similar framework with regards to a general tetrahedron.

Consider an affine map which sends a general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to the tetrahedron $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$, where

$$
X_{0} \equiv[0,0,0], \quad X_{1} \equiv[1,0,0], \quad X_{2} \equiv[0,1,0] \quad \text { and } \quad X_{3} \equiv[0,0,1]
$$

Such a tetrahedron will be called the Standard tetrahedron (see Figure 3.1). This affine


Figure 3.1: An affine map from $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$
map can be defined by translating the point $A_{0}$ of the general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to $X_{0}$ and then applying a linear map with matrix representation $L$ to send the other three
vertices to $X_{1}, X_{2}$ and $X_{3}$. If we equip $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ with a symmetric bilinear form with matrix representation $C$ then this affine mapping induces a new symmetric bilinear form, defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
u \cdot{ }_{C} v & =u C v^{T}=u\left(L L^{-1}\right) C\left(L L^{-1}\right)^{T} v^{T} \\
& =(u L)\left[\left(L^{-1}\right) C\left(L^{-1}\right)^{T}\right](v L)^{T}
\end{aligned}
$$

For $M \equiv L^{-1}$, we set the matrix $M C M^{T}$ to be the matrix

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

that has been previously defined, so that

$$
u \cdot C v=(u L) \cdot{ }_{B}(v L)
$$

We use the matrix $B$ to represent the induced symmetric bilinear form so that the adjugate matrix

$$
\operatorname{adj} B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\alpha_{1} & \beta_{3} & \beta_{2} \\
\beta_{3} & \alpha_{2} & \beta_{1} \\
\beta_{2} & \beta_{1} & \alpha_{3}
\end{array}\right)
$$

will be available to us when we perform our calculations in this chapter. This matrix plays an important role in this method of studying the rational trigonometry of a general tetrahedron over a general metrical framework.

Example 42 (Induced symmetric bilinear form for the Khafre tetrahedron) Consider the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$, where

$$
O \equiv[0,0,0], \quad R \equiv[3,0,0], \quad A \equiv[3,3,0] \quad \text { and } \quad P \equiv[0,0,4]
$$

and equip its associated vector space $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ with the Euclidean bilinear form, where its matrix representation is given by $I$, the $3 \times 3$ identity matrix. We consider an affine map which sends the points $O, R, A$ and $P$ respectively to the points $X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}$ and $X_{3}$, which ultimately degenerates to a linear map. Representing such a linear map by $L$, if $M \equiv L^{-1}$ then

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 4
\end{array}\right)
$$

This linear map induces a new symmetric bilinear form with matrix representation

$$
M M^{T}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 4
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
3 & 0 & 0 \\
3 & 3 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 4
\end{array}\right)^{T}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
9 & 9 & 0 \\
9 & 18 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 16
\end{array}\right)
$$

So if we are to recalculate our trigonometric quantities for the Khafre tetrahedron with respect to the Standard tetrahedron $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$, we simply need to calculate the trigonometric quantities of $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$ over this new symmetric bilinear form.

Oftentimes a vector proof is an easy, time-saving process. When such a proof becomes too complicated we can use the above trigonometric quantities for the Standard tetrahedron to prove a result using brute force. This gives a powerful general technology for establishing results on this subject. Note that a proof involving substitution of the trigonometric quantities of the Standard tetrahedron is general in nature, since it can be obtained from a general tetrahedron by an affine map which preserves the geometric structure of the objects of interest. Because of this, we will see that such a technique will be applied when proving the subsequent results in this chapter. For the rest of this chapter, we will assume the Standard tetrahedron to be available to us with all the quantities defined and evaluated as below.

### 3.1 Trigonometric quantities of the Standard tetrahedron

In what follows, we define useful quantities associated to the matrices $B$ and $\operatorname{adj} B$ as

$$
\begin{gathered}
D \equiv \alpha_{1}+\alpha_{2}+\alpha_{3}+2 \beta_{1}+2 \beta_{2}+2 \beta_{3}, \\
r_{1} \equiv a_{2}+a_{3}-2 b_{1}, \quad r_{2} \equiv a_{1}+a_{3}-2 b_{2}, \quad r_{3} \equiv a_{1}+a_{2}-2 b_{3}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\Delta \equiv \operatorname{det} B=a_{1} a_{2} a_{3}+2 b_{1} b_{2} b_{3}-a_{1} b_{1}^{2}-a_{2} b_{2}^{2}-a_{3} b_{3}^{2}
$$

Suppose $Q_{i j} \equiv Q_{B}\left(X_{i}, X_{j}\right)$ for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$. Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{01} & =Q_{B}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)=Q_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{X_{0} X_{1}}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
0 \\
0
\end{array}\right)=a_{1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, we will have

$$
Q_{02}=a_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{03}=a_{3} .
$$

We also have

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{23} & =Q_{B}\left(X_{2}, X_{3}\right)=Q_{B}\left(\overrightarrow{X_{2}} \overrightarrow{X_{3}}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{lll}
0 & -1 & 1
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
-1 \\
1
\end{array}\right) \\
& =a_{2}+a_{3}-2 b_{1}=r_{1},
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly,

$$
Q_{13}=r_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12}=r_{3}
$$

Define the $B$-quadreas associated to each triangle of the Standard tetrahedron to be

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2}}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{013} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{3}}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{023} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{X_{0} X_{2} X_{3}}\right)
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{A}_{123} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}\right) .
$$

By the definition of the $B$-quadrea,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A}_{012} & =A\left(Q_{01}, Q_{02}, Q_{12}\right)=\left(a_{1}+a_{2}+r_{3}\right)^{2}-2\left(a_{1}^{2}+a_{2}^{2}+r_{3}^{2}\right) \\
& =4\left(a_{1} a_{2}-b_{3}^{2}\right)=4 \alpha_{3} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly,

$$
\mathcal{A}_{013}=4 \alpha_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{023}=4 \alpha_{1} .
$$

Finally, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A}_{123}= & A\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, r_{3}\right)=\left(r_{1}+r_{2}+r_{3}\right)^{2}-2\left(r_{1}^{2}+r_{2}^{2}+r_{3}^{2}\right) \\
= & 4\left(a_{1}+a_{2}+a_{3}-b_{1}-b_{2}-b_{3}\right)^{2} \\
& -2\left(\left(a_{2}+a_{3}-2 b_{1}\right)^{2}+\left(a_{1}+a_{3}-2 b_{2}\right)^{2}+\left(a_{1}+a_{2}-2 b_{3}\right)^{2}\right) \\
= & 4\left[\left(a_{2} a_{3}-b_{1}^{2}\right)+\left(a_{1} a_{3}-b_{2}^{2}\right)+\left(a_{1} a_{2}-b_{3}^{2}\right)\right] \\
& +8\left[\left(b_{1} b_{2}-a_{3} b_{3}\right)+\left(b_{1} b_{3}-a_{2} b_{2}\right)+\left(b_{2} b_{3}-a_{1} b_{1}\right)\right] \\
= & 4\left(\alpha_{1}+\alpha_{2}+\alpha_{3}+2 \beta_{1}+2 \beta_{2}+2 \beta_{3}\right) \\
= & 4 D .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Quadrume theorem, the $B$-quadrume of the Standard tetrahedron $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$
is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V} & \equiv \mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
2 a_{1} & a_{1}+a_{2}-r_{3} & a_{1}+a_{3}-r_{2} \\
a_{1}+a_{2}-r_{3} & 2 a_{2} & a_{2}+a_{3}-r_{1} \\
a_{1}+a_{3}-r_{2} & a_{2}+a_{3}-r_{1} & 2 a_{3}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =4 \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}
a_{1} & b_{3} & b_{2} \\
b_{3} & a_{2} & b_{1} \\
b_{2} & b_{1} & a_{3}
\end{array}\right)=4 \Delta .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $s_{i ; j k} \equiv s_{B}\left(X_{i} X_{j}, X_{i} X_{k}\right)$ for $0 \leq i \leq 3$ and $0 \leq j<k \leq 3$ with $j$ and $k$ not equal to $i$, then by the Quadrea spread theorem,

$$
s_{0 ; 12}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{012}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02}}=\frac{\alpha_{3}}{a_{1} a_{2}} .
$$

Similarly,

$$
s_{1 ; 02}=\frac{\alpha_{3}}{a_{1} r_{3}} \quad \text { and } \quad s_{2 ; 01}=\frac{\alpha_{3}}{a_{2} r_{3}},
$$

and the remaining $B$-spreads of the Standard tetrahedron are

$$
\begin{gathered}
s_{0 ; 13}=\frac{\alpha_{2}}{a_{1} a_{3}}, \quad s_{1 ; 02}=\frac{\alpha_{2}}{a_{1} r_{2}}, \quad s_{2 ; 01}=\frac{\alpha_{2}}{a_{3} r_{2}}, \\
s_{0 ; 23}=\frac{\alpha_{1}}{a_{2} a_{3}}, \quad s_{2 ; 03}=\frac{\alpha_{1}}{a_{2} r_{1}}, \quad s_{3 ; 02}=\frac{\alpha_{1}}{a_{3} r_{1}}, \\
s_{1 ; 23}=\frac{D}{r_{2} r_{3}}, \quad s_{2 ; 13}=\frac{D}{r_{1} r_{3}} \quad \text { and } \quad s_{3 ; 12}=\frac{D}{r_{1} r_{2}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Using the Dihedral spread theorem,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{01} & \equiv E_{B}\left(X_{0} X_{1} X_{2}, X_{0} X_{1} X_{3}\right)=\frac{4 Q_{01} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013}} \\
& =\frac{4 a_{1}(4 \Delta)}{\left(4 \alpha_{2}\right)\left(4 \alpha_{3}\right)}=\frac{a_{1} \Delta}{\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

By defining and calculating the other $B$-dihedral spreads of the Standard tetrahedron similarly, they will evaluate to

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{02}=\frac{a_{2} \Delta}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3}}, \quad E_{03}=\frac{a_{3} \Delta}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2}}, \\
E_{23}=\frac{r_{1} \Delta}{\alpha_{1} D}, \quad E_{13}=\frac{r_{2} \Delta}{\alpha_{2} D} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{12}=\frac{r_{3} \Delta}{\alpha_{3} D} .
\end{gathered}
$$

If $C_{i j} \equiv 1-E_{i j}$ are the respective $B$-dihedral crosses of the Standard tetrahedron, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_{01} & =1-\frac{a_{1} \Delta}{\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}} \\
& =\frac{\left(a_{1} a_{3}-b_{2}^{2}\right)\left(a_{1} a_{2}-b_{3}^{2}\right)-a_{1}\left(a_{1} a_{2} a_{3}+2 b_{1} b_{2} b_{3}-a_{1} b_{1}^{2}-a_{2} b_{2}^{2}-a_{3} b_{3}^{2}\right)}{\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}} \\
& =\frac{\left(a_{1} b_{1}-b_{2} b_{3}\right)^{2}}{\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}}=\frac{\beta_{1}^{2}}{\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}},
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
C_{02}=\frac{\beta_{2}^{2}}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3}}, \quad C_{03}=\frac{\beta_{3}^{2}}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2}}, \\
C_{23}=\frac{\left(\alpha_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}}{\alpha_{1} D}, & C_{13}=\frac{\left(\alpha_{2}+\beta_{1}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}}{\alpha_{2} D} \text { and } C_{12}=\frac{\left(\alpha_{3}+\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}\right)^{2}}{\alpha_{3} D} .
\end{array}
$$

Using the Solid spread theorem, the $B$-solid spread $\mathcal{S}_{0} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(X_{0} X_{1}, X_{0} X_{2}, X_{0} X_{3}\right)$ evaluates to

$$
\mathcal{S}_{0}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q_{01} Q_{02} Q_{03}}=\frac{\Delta}{a_{1} a_{2} a_{3}} .
$$

We define the remaining $B$-solid spreads of the Standard tetrahedron similarly and obtain

$$
\mathcal{S}_{1}=\frac{\Delta}{a_{1} r_{2} r_{3}}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{2}=\frac{\Delta}{a_{2} r_{1} r_{3}} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3}=\frac{\Delta}{a_{3} r_{1} r_{2}} .
$$

We can also use the Dual solid spread theorem to compute the $B$-dual solid spreads of the Standard tetrahedron. We will define and evaluate them as

$$
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\frac{\Delta^{2}}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}}, \quad \mathcal{D}_{1}=\frac{\Delta^{2}}{\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3} D}, \quad \mathcal{D}_{2}=\frac{\Delta^{2}}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3} D} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3}=\frac{\Delta^{2}}{\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} D}
$$

Example 43 (Trigonometric quantities of the Khafre tetrahedron) Recall from Example 42 that for the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$, the induced symmetric bilinear form after a linear map from $\overline{O R A P}$ to the Standard tetrahedron $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$ has matrix representation

$$
B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
9 & 9 & 0 \\
9 & 18 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 16
\end{array}\right)
$$

We take note of the fact that

$$
\operatorname{adj} B=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
288 & -144 & 0 \\
-144 & 144 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 81
\end{array}\right)
$$

as well as

$$
\begin{aligned}
D & =288+144+81+2 \times(-144)=225, \\
r_{1}=18+16 & =34, \quad r_{2}=9+16=25, \quad r_{3}=9+18-18=9
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\Delta=\operatorname{det} B=1296
$$

By substitution of the relevant quantities into the above formulas, the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$ has quadrances

$$
\begin{gathered}
Q_{O R}=9, \quad Q_{O A}=18, \quad Q_{O P}=16 \\
Q_{A P}=34, \quad Q_{R P}=25 \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{R A}=9,
\end{gathered}
$$

quadreas

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{A}_{O R A}=4 \times 81=324, \quad \mathcal{A}_{O R P}=4 \times 144=576 \\
\mathcal{A}_{O A P}=4 \times 288=1152 \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{A R P}=4 \times 225=900
\end{gathered}
$$

quadrume

$$
\mathcal{V}=4 \times 1296=5184
$$

spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
s_{O ; R A}=\frac{81}{9 \times 18}=\frac{1}{2}, \quad s_{R ; O A}=\frac{81}{9 \times 9}=1, \quad s_{A ; O R}=\frac{81}{9 \times 18}=\frac{1}{2} \\
s_{O ; R P}=\frac{144}{9 \times 16}=1, \quad s_{R ; O P}=\frac{144}{9 \times 25}=\frac{16}{25}, \quad s_{P ; O R}=\frac{144}{16 \times 25}=\frac{9}{25} \\
s_{O ; A P}=\frac{288}{18 \times 16}=1, \quad s_{A ; O P}=\frac{288}{18 \times 34}=\frac{8}{17}, \quad s_{P ; O A}=\frac{288}{16 \times 34}=\frac{9}{17} \\
s_{A ; R P}=\frac{225}{34 \times 9}=\frac{25}{34}, \quad s_{R ; A P}=\frac{225}{25 \times 9}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad s_{P ; A R}=\frac{225}{34 \times 25}=\frac{9}{34}
\end{gathered}
$$

dihedral spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{O R}=\frac{9 \times 1296}{144 \times 81}=1, \quad E_{A P}=\frac{34 \times 1296}{288 \times 225}=\frac{17}{25}, \\
E_{O A}=\frac{18 \times 1296}{81 \times 288}=1, \quad E_{R P}=\frac{25 \times 1296}{144 \times 225}=1, \\
E_{O P}=\frac{16 \times 1296}{144 \times 288}=\frac{1}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{R A}=\frac{9 \times 1296}{81 \times 225}=\frac{16}{25},
\end{gathered}
$$

dihedral crosses

$$
\begin{gathered}
C_{O R}=0, \quad C_{O A}=0, \quad C_{O P}=\frac{1}{2} \\
C_{A P}=\frac{8}{25}, \quad C_{R P}=0 \quad \text { and } \quad C_{R A}=\frac{9}{25}
\end{gathered}
$$

solid spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{S}_{O}=\frac{1296}{9 \times 18 \times 16}=\frac{1}{2}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{R}=\frac{1296}{9 \times 25 \times 9}=\frac{16}{25} \\
\mathcal{S}_{A}=\frac{1296}{34 \times 18 \times 9}=\frac{4}{17} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{P}=\frac{1296}{34 \times 25 \times 16}=\frac{81}{850}
\end{gathered}
$$

and dual solid spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{D}_{O}=\frac{1296^{2}}{81 \times 144 \times 288}=\frac{1}{2}, \quad \mathcal{D}_{R}=\frac{1296^{2}}{81 \times 144 \times 225}=\frac{16}{25}, \\
\mathcal{D}_{A}=\frac{1296^{2}}{81 \times 288 \times 225}=\frac{8}{25} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{P}=\frac{1296^{2}}{144 \times 288 \times 225}=\frac{9}{50} .
\end{gathered}
$$

These are the exact same quantities that we have obtained previously for $\overline{O R A P}$ in Chapter 2.

### 3.2 Tetrahedron cross law

The relationship between the $B$-quadreas associated to the faces of a general tetrahedron has been a study of interest for a long while, dating back to Richardson's paper [45] on the trigonometry of the tetrahedron in the classical framework. The Dual solid spread ratio theorem gave us the fact that the ratio of the $B$-quadreas to the $B$-dual solid spreads is constant; inspired by this, we aim to derive an algebraic relationship between the $B$ quadreas of a tetrahedron. While no direct relationship exists, we may derive a relationship by involving the three $B$-dihedral crosses of a tetrahedron which emanate from one of its points. Proven in the classical case by Lee [37], it is sufficient for us to prove this result in the rational case for the Standard tetrahedron $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$, as an affine map acting on this tetrahedron will leave the final result invariant.

Theorem 44 (Tetrahedron cross law) For the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadreas

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{A}_{012} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{013} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}}\right), \\
\mathcal{A}_{023} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{123} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

and $B$-dihedral crosses

$$
C_{01} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}\right), \quad C_{02} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right)
$$

and

$$
C_{03} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right),
$$

we have the relation

$$
\left.\left.\begin{array}{rl} 
& {\left[\left[\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)^{2}\right]\right.}
\end{array}\right]^{2}-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)\right] .
$$

Proof. Define the Tetrahedron cross function to be

$$
T(a, b, c, d, x, y, z) \equiv\binom{\left((a+b+c-d)^{2}-4(a b x+a c y+b c z)\right)^{2}}{-64 a b c(a x y+b x z+c y z)}^{2}-4096 a^{2} b^{2} c^{2} x y z(a+b+c-d)^{2}
$$

so that we are required to prove the following:

$$
T\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}, \mathcal{A}_{123}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right)=0
$$

Substituting the quantities associated to the Standard tetrahedron, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}, \mathcal{A}_{123}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right) \\
= & 2^{16}\left[\left[\left(\alpha_{1}+\alpha_{2}+\alpha_{3}-D\right)^{2}-4\left(\beta_{1}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right]^{2}-64\left(\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right]^{2} \\
& -2^{28} \beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\left(\alpha_{1}+\alpha_{2}+\alpha_{3}-D\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

We use the definition of $D$ involved in the calculation of the trigonometric quantities of the Standard tetrahedron to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}, \mathcal{A}_{123}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right) \\
&= 2^{16}\left(\left[\left[4\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(\beta_{1}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right]^{2}-64\left(\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right]^{2}\right) \\
&-2^{14} \beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2} \\
&= 2^{16}\left[2^{14} \beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}-2^{14} \beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}\right]=0,
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.
Note that three similar relations can be obtained by permuting the indices. We now present a novel result (as a corollary) which can give us a reformulation of the Tetrahedron cross law in terms of the dual solid spreads instead of the quadreas. Recall that $K$ is the Richardson number we defined in the previous chapter.

Corollary 45 For a general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-quadreas $\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{123}, B$-dihedral crosses $C_{01}, C_{02}$ and $C_{03}$, Richardson number $K$ and $B$-dual solid spreads $\mathcal{D}_{0}, \mathcal{D}_{1}, \mathcal{D}_{2}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{3}$, the following relation is satisfied:

$$
T\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}, \mathcal{A}_{123}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right)=(4 K)^{8} \times T\left(\mathcal{D}_{3}, \mathcal{D}_{2}, \mathcal{D}_{1}, \mathcal{D}_{0}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right)
$$

Proof. We take the reciprocal of each equality of the Dual solid spread theorem to obtain

$$
\frac{\mathcal{A}_{123}}{\mathcal{D}_{0}}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{023}}{\mathcal{D}_{1}}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{013}}{\mathcal{D}_{2}}=\frac{\mathcal{A}_{012}}{\mathcal{D}_{3}}=4 K
$$

From this, we find that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}, \mathcal{A}_{123}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right) \\
= & T\left(4 K \mathcal{D}_{3}, 4 K \mathcal{D}_{2}, 4 K \mathcal{D}_{1}, 4 K \mathcal{D}_{0}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right) \\
= & (4 K)^{8}\left[\left[\left[\begin{array}{c}
\left.\left(\mathcal{D}_{1}+\mathcal{D}_{2}+\mathcal{D}_{3}-\mathcal{D}_{0}\right)^{2}-4\left(\mathcal{D}_{2} \mathcal{D}_{3} C_{01}+\mathcal{D}_{1} \mathcal{D}_{3} C_{02}+\mathcal{D}_{1} \mathcal{D}_{2} C_{03}\right)\right]^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{D}_{1} \mathcal{D}_{2} \mathcal{D}_{3}\left(\mathcal{D}_{3} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{D}_{2} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{D}_{1} C_{02} C_{03}\right) \\
-4096 \mathcal{D}_{1} \mathcal{D}_{2} \mathcal{D}_{3} C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}\left(\mathcal{D}_{1}+\mathcal{D}_{2}+\mathcal{D}_{3}-\mathcal{D}_{0}\right)^{2}
\end{array}\right]\right.\right. \\
= & (4 K)^{8} \times T\left(\mathcal{D}_{3}, \mathcal{D}_{2}, \mathcal{D}_{1}, \mathcal{D}_{0}, C_{01}, C_{02}, C_{03}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.
As a result of this corollary, we can replace the $B$-quadreas in the Tetrahedron cross law with the ppposing $B$-dual solid spreads, so that the Tetrahedron cross law holds for $B$-dual solid spreads also. We also note that by permuting the indices we obtain three similar relations to the above result. We now verify the Tetrahedron cross law for the Khafre tetrahedron given in Chapter 2.

Example 46 (Tetrahedron cross law on Khafre tetrahedron) For the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$, we note the important observation that $C_{O R}=C_{O A}=C_{R P}=0$. This helps us greatly reduce our equations to

$$
\begin{gathered}
T\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}, \mathcal{A}_{O R P}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, C_{O R}, C_{O A}, C_{O P}\right) \\
=\left(\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}+\mathcal{A}_{O R P}+\mathcal{A}_{O A P}-\mathcal{A}_{R A P}\right)^{2}-4 \mathcal{A}_{O R P} \mathcal{A}_{O A P} C_{O P}\right)^{4} \\
=\left(\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}, \mathcal{A}_{O R P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, C_{O R}, C_{R A}, C_{R P}\right)\right. \\
\left.=\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}+\mathcal{A}_{O R P}+\mathcal{A}_{R A P}-\mathcal{A}_{O A P}\right)^{2}-4 \mathcal{A}_{O R A} \mathcal{A}_{R A P} C_{R A}\right)^{4} \\
=\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, \mathcal{A}_{O R P}, C_{O A}, C_{R A}, C_{A P}\right) \\
\left.\left(\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}+\mathcal{A}_{O A P}+\mathcal{A}_{R A P}-\mathcal{A}_{O R P}\right)^{2}-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A} \mathcal{A}_{R A P} C_{R A}+\mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{R A P} C_{A P}\right)\right)^{2}\right)^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{O R A} \mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{R A P}^{2} C_{R A} C_{A P}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R P}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, \mathcal{A}_{O R A}, C_{O P}, C_{R P}, C_{A P}\right) \\
&=\left(\left(\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R P}+\mathcal{A}_{O A P}+\mathcal{A}_{R A P}-\mathcal{A}_{O R A}\right)^{2}-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R P} \mathcal{A}_{O A P} C_{O P}+\mathcal{A}_{O A P} \mathcal{A}_{R A P} C_{A P}\right)\right)^{2}\right. \\
&-64 \mathcal{A}_{O R P} \mathcal{A}_{O A P}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{R A P} C_{O P} C_{A P}
\end{aligned}
$$

We substitute our required quantities to obtain

$$
\begin{gathered}
T\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}, \mathcal{A}_{O R P}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, C_{O R}, C_{O A}, C_{O P}\right) \\
=\left((324+576+1152-900)^{2}-4(576)(1152)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\right)^{4}=0 \\
=\left((324+576+900-1152)^{2}-4(324)(900)\left(\frac{9}{25}\right)\right)^{4}=0 \\
=\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}, \mathcal{A}_{O R P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, C_{O R}, C_{R A}, C_{R P}\right) \\
=\left(\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R A}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, \mathcal{A}_{O R P}, C_{O A}, C_{R A}, C_{A P}\right)\right. \\
= \\
\left(1492992^{2}-2229025112064\right)^{2}=0
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl} 
& T\left(\mathcal{A}_{O R P}, \mathcal{A}_{O A P}, \mathcal{A}_{R A P}, \mathcal{A}_{O R A}, C_{O P}, C_{R P}, C_{A P}\right) \\
= & \left(\left((576+1152+900-324)^{2}-4\left((576)(1152)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)+(1152)(900)\left(\frac{8}{25}\right)\right)\right)^{2}\right)^{2} \\
-64(576)(1152)^{2}(900)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{8}{25}\right)
\end{array}\right)
$$

This completes the verification of all possible cases of the Tetrahedron cross law for the Khafre tetrahedron.

### 3.3 Dihedral cross relation

In this section we investigate the relation between the six $B$-dihedral crosses of a general tetrahedron. While introduced classically by Richardson [45], a rational version was proposed without proof in [63]. We now present this result with proof.

Theorem 47 (Dihedral cross relation) For the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with $B$-dihedral crosses

$$
\begin{gathered}
C_{01} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}\right), \quad C_{23} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \\
C_{02} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \quad C_{13} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \\
C_{03} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad C_{12} \equiv C_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

define the variables

$$
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}, \quad Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}, \quad Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12}, \\
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}, \\
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z), \\
R \equiv P+z-Z, \quad S \equiv P+y-Y, \quad T \equiv P+x-X, \\
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right) .
$$

Then, we have that

$$
V^{2}=X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right)
$$

Proof. Given the $B$-dihedral crosses of the Standard tetrahedron $\overline{X_{0} X_{1} X_{2} X_{3}}$ that we have computed earlier, we can use a computer to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
V^{2}= & \frac{\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}}{\alpha_{1}^{8} \alpha_{2}^{8} \alpha_{3}^{8} D^{8}}(\operatorname{det}(\operatorname{adj} B))^{2}\left(\alpha_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}\left(\alpha_{2}+\beta_{1}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}\left(\alpha_{3}+\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}\right)^{2} \\
& \left(\begin{array}{c}
2 \beta_{1} \beta_{2} \beta_{3}\left(\beta_{1} \beta_{2}+\beta_{1} \beta_{3}+\beta_{2} \beta_{3}\right)\left(\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2}+\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3}+\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\right) \\
+2 \beta_{1} \beta_{2} \beta_{3}\left(\alpha_{1} \beta_{1}^{3}+\alpha_{2} \beta_{2}^{3}+\alpha_{3} \beta_{3}^{3}\right)-\left(\alpha_{1}^{2} \beta_{1}^{5}+\alpha_{2}^{2} \beta_{2}^{5}+\alpha_{3}^{2} \beta_{3}^{5}\right) \\
-4 \alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} \alpha_{3} \beta_{1} \beta_{2} \beta_{3}\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)-\alpha_{1}\left(\alpha_{2}^{2} \beta_{2}^{4}+\alpha_{3}^{2} \beta_{3}^{4}-\beta_{1}^{4}\left(\beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right) \\
-\alpha_{2}\left(\alpha_{1}^{2} \beta_{1}^{4}+\alpha_{3}^{2} \beta_{3}^{4}-\beta_{2}^{4}\left(\beta_{1}^{2}+\beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right)-\alpha_{3}\left(\alpha_{1}^{2} \beta_{1}^{4}+\alpha_{2}^{2} \beta_{2}^{4}-\beta_{3}^{4}\left(\beta_{1}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2}\right)\right) \\
-\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\left(\alpha_{1} \alpha_{2}\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{2}\right)^{2}+\alpha_{1} \alpha_{3}\left(\beta_{1}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}+\alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\left(\beta_{2}+\beta_{3}\right)^{2}\right) \\
-2 \alpha_{1} \alpha_{2} \alpha_{3}\left(\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{1}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\right)-\alpha_{1}^{2} \beta_{1}\left(\alpha_{2}^{2} \alpha_{3}^{2}+\alpha_{2}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2}+\alpha_{3}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\right) \\
-\alpha_{2}^{2} \beta_{2}\left(\alpha_{1}^{2} \alpha_{3}^{2}+\alpha_{1}^{2} \beta_{1}^{2}+\alpha_{3}^{2} \beta_{3}^{2}\right)-\alpha_{3}^{2} \beta_{3}\left(\alpha_{1}^{2} \alpha_{2}^{2}+\alpha_{1}^{2} \beta_{1}^{2}+\alpha_{2}^{2} \beta_{2}^{2}\right) \\
\end{array}\right. \\
& \binom{\left.2 \beta^{2}\right) .}{-\beta_{1} \beta_{2} \beta_{3}\left(\beta_{1} \beta_{2}\left(\beta_{1}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2}-2 \beta_{3}^{2}\right)+\beta_{1} \beta_{3}\left(\beta_{1}^{2}-2 \beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{3}^{2}\right)+\beta_{2} \beta_{3}\left(-2 \beta_{1}^{2}+\beta_{2}^{2}+\beta_{3}^{2}\right)\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.
Note that if we are given five of the six $B$-dihedral crosses, solving for the other $B$ dihedral cross requires solving a degree 8 polynomial. We now proceed to verify the Dihedral cross relation for the Khafre tetrahedron.

Example 48 (Dihedral cross relation on Khafre tetrahedron) For the Khafre tetrahedron $\overline{O R A P}$, the variables that we defined in the theorem become

$$
X=Y=x=W=P=T=U=V=0,
$$

as well as

$$
Z=\frac{9}{50}, \quad y=\frac{8}{25}, \quad z=\frac{43}{50}, \quad R=\frac{17}{25} \quad \text { and } \quad S=\frac{8}{25} .
$$

Since $X=Y=V=0$, we have that

$$
X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right)=0=V^{2}
$$

Thus the Dihedral cross relation is verified rather trivially for the Khafre tetrahedron.

## Chapter 4

## Special tetrahedra and their properties

We will now apply the framework from the previous chapters to verify our results with a variety of special tetrahedra. In particular, we will consider three specific examples of tetrahedra: the regular tetrahedron, the isosceles tetrahedron (or disphenoid) and the trirectangular tetrahedron. Furthermore, we will consider two further examples of a general tetrahedron, whereby in one case we consider a relativistic bilinear form equipped to the associated vector space and in the other case we consider an example over a finite field of 11 elements.

First, we will review some basic notation: a general tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ has $B$ quadrances $Q_{i j} \equiv Q_{B}\left(A_{i}, A_{j}\right)$ (for $\left.0 \leq i<j \leq 3\right)$, $B$-quadreas

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{A}_{012} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{013} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}}\right), \\
\mathcal{A}_{023} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{123} \equiv \mathcal{A}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

$B$-quadrume $\mathcal{V} \equiv \mathcal{V}_{B}\left(\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}\right), B$-spreads $s_{i ; j k} \equiv s_{B}\left(A_{i} A_{j}, A_{i} A_{k}\right)$ (for $i=0,1,2,3$ and $0 \leq j<k \leq 3$ with $j, k \neq i$ ), $B$-dihedral spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{01} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}\right), \quad E_{23} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \\
E_{02} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \quad E_{13} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right), \\
E_{03} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{3}, A_{0} A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad E_{12} \equiv E_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

$B$-dihedral crosses $C_{i j} \equiv 1-E_{i j}($ for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3)$, $B$-solid spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{S}_{0} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{0} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{3}\right), \quad \mathcal{S}_{1} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{3}\right), \\
\mathcal{S}_{2} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3} \equiv \mathcal{S}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{3}, A_{2} A_{3}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

and $B$-dual solid spreads

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{D}_{0} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{0} A_{2}, A_{0} A_{3}\right), \quad \mathcal{D}_{1} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{1}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{3}\right), \\
\mathcal{D}_{2} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{2}, A_{1} A_{2}, A_{2} A_{3}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3} \equiv \mathcal{D}_{B}\left(A_{0} A_{3}, A_{1} A_{3}, A_{2} A_{3}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

### 4.1 Regular tetrahedron

The regular tetrahedron is one of the five Platonic solids in Book XIII of Elements [26]. In our framework, we would like to generalise this by prescribing an arbitrary symmetric bilinear form so that we can take a regular tetrahedron in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ to have the unique property that the $B$-quadrances between any two points of it are all equal. The solid is thus symmetrical and, as a result, it suffices for us to compute one of each trigonometric quantity (as the rest would be equal). Note that there is a subtle question of existence and uniqueness of regular tetrahedra (up to order of scale), but it will not be explored in this thesis.


Figure 4.1: Regular tetrahedron
Suppose a regular tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ has $B$-quadrances $Q_{i j} \equiv Q$ for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, as in Figure 4.1. The $B$-quadrume of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is evaluated by the Quadrume theorem as

$$
\mathcal{V}=\frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
2 Q & Q & Q \\
Q & 2 Q & Q \\
Q & Q & 2 Q
\end{array}\right|=2 Q^{3}
$$

and the $B$-quadrea of each of the four triangles of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is

$$
\mathcal{A}=A(Q, Q, Q)=(3 Q)^{2}-2\left(3 Q^{2}\right)=3 Q^{2} .
$$

Suppose the $B$-spreads associated to a vertex of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are equal to $s$. Then we use the Triple spread formula to obtain the equation

$$
3 s^{2}-4 s^{3}=s^{2}(3-4 s)=0 .
$$

Eliminating the trivial solution (which corresponds to a degenerate triangle of three collinear points) gives us the $B$-spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, which are all equal to

$$
s=\frac{3}{4} .
$$

The $B$-spreads can also be obtained by use of the Quadrea spread theorem, and are precisely the $B$-spreads of an equilateral triangle.

By the Dihedral spread theorem we have that the $B$-dihedral spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, denoted by $E$, are all equal to

$$
E=\frac{4 Q \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}}=\frac{4 Q\left(2 Q^{3}\right)}{\left(3 Q^{2}\right)^{2}}=\frac{8}{9}
$$

As a consequence the $B$-dihedral crosses of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, denoted by $C$, are all equal to

$$
C=1-E=\frac{1}{9} .
$$

By the Solid spread theorem we have that the $B$-solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, denoted by $\mathcal{S}$, are all equal to

$$
\mathcal{S}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q^{3}}=\frac{1}{2}
$$

We confirm this result by using the Solid spread projective theorem to arrive at the same answer:

$$
\mathcal{S}=E s^{2}=\frac{8}{9}\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^{2}=\frac{1}{2}
$$

If we denote the $B$-skew quadrances of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ (which are all equal) by $R$, then we can use the Skew quadrance theorem to obtain

$$
R=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 Q^{2}}=\frac{Q}{2}
$$

The ratio theorems in Chapter 3 will trivially hold due to the symmetry of the regular tetrahedron. The $B$-dual solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, which are evaluated by the Dual solid spread theorem, will be denoted by $\mathcal{D}$ and are all equal to

$$
\mathcal{D}=\frac{4\left(2 Q^{3}\right)^{2}}{\left(3 Q^{2}\right)^{3}}=\frac{16}{27} .
$$

Confirming this result by using the Dual solid spread projective theorem,

$$
\mathcal{D}=E^{2} s=\left(\frac{8}{9}\right)^{2} \frac{3}{4}=\frac{16}{27}
$$

To verify all of the results of the Tetrahedron cross law for the regular tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, we note that its symmetry implies that the four equations reduce to one single
equation, namely

$$
256 \mathcal{A}^{8}\left((1-3 C)^{2}-12 C^{2}\right)^{2}=4096 \mathcal{A}^{6} C^{3}(2 \mathcal{A})^{2}=16384 \mathcal{A}^{8} C^{3}
$$

We simplify this result to obtain an equation independent of $\mathcal{A}$, as follows:

$$
\left(3 C^{2}+6 C-1\right)^{2}=64 C^{3} .
$$

We can now examine the possible solutions of this equation for $C$ without any dependence on $\mathcal{A}$.

Given we know that $C=\frac{1}{9}$ for a regular tetrahedron, we can then deduce that

$$
\left(3 C^{2}+6 C-1\right)^{2}=\left(\frac{1}{27}+\frac{2}{3}-1\right)^{2}=\frac{64}{729}=64\left(\frac{1}{9}\right)^{3}=64 C^{3} .
$$

So, $C=\frac{1}{9}$ is indeed a solution to this reduced equation and hence the Tetrahedron cross law is verified for a regular tetrahedron. Furthermore, we can factorise the difference between the two sides to get

$$
\left(3 C^{2}+6 C-1\right)^{2}-64 C^{3}=(9 C-1)(C-1)^{3} .
$$

This is zero precisely when $C=\frac{1}{9}$ or when $C=1$; while the former case has been discussed above, the latter case implies that $E=0$ and hence corresponds to the case to when the four points of the regular tetrahedron are coplanar.

In the case of the regular tetrahedron, where $C_{i j}=C=\frac{1}{9}$ for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, we set

$$
\begin{gathered}
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}=\frac{1}{81}, \quad Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}=\frac{1}{81}, \quad Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}=\frac{1}{81}, \\
x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}=\frac{2}{9}, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}=\frac{2}{9}, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12}=\frac{2}{9}, \\
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}=\frac{4}{729}, \\
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z)=\frac{5}{27}, \\
R \equiv P+z-Z=\frac{32}{81}, \quad S \equiv P+y-Y=\frac{32}{81}, \quad T \equiv P+x-X=\frac{32}{81}, \\
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)=\frac{32}{2187}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right) \frac{1024}{14348907}=\frac{2^{10}}{3^{15}} .
$$

Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right) \\
= & \left(\frac{1}{81}\right)^{3}\left(\frac{1}{27}\left(\frac{32}{81}\right)^{4}+2\left(\frac{32}{2187}\right)\left(\frac{32}{81}\right)^{3}\right) \\
= & \frac{1048576}{205891132094649} \\
= & \frac{2^{20}}{3^{30}}=\left(\frac{2^{10}}{3^{15}}\right)^{2}=V^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

and we have the Dihedral cross relation for a regular tetrahedron.

### 4.2 Isosceles tetrahedron (Disphenoid)

As defined by Leech [38], a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is an isosceles tetrahedron or a disphenoid precisely when

$$
Q_{01}=Q_{23}, \quad Q_{02}=Q_{13} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{03}=Q_{12}
$$

We can parameterise a disphenoid by defining

$$
D_{1} \equiv Q_{01}=Q_{23}, \quad D_{2} \equiv Q_{02}=Q_{13} \quad \text { and } \quad D_{3} \equiv Q_{03}=Q_{12},
$$

and illustrate this in Figure 4.2. If $D_{1}=D_{2}=D_{3}$, then a disphenoid degenerates to a regular tetrahedron.


Figure 4.2: Isosceles tetrahedron (disphenoid)

As each triangle of the disphenoid has quadrances $D_{1}, D_{2}$ and $D_{3}$, the $B$-quadreas are all equal and evaluate to

$$
\mathcal{A}=A\left(D_{1}, D_{2}, D_{3}\right)=\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-2\left(D_{1}^{2}+D_{2}^{2}+D_{3}^{2}\right) .
$$

By the Quadrume theorem, the $B$-quadrume of the disphenoid is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V} & =2\left(-D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)\left(D_{1}-D_{2}+D_{3}\right)\left(D_{1}+D_{2}-D_{3}\right) \\
& =16\left(\sigma-D_{1}\right)\left(\sigma-D_{2}\right)\left(\sigma-D_{3}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\sigma=\frac{D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}}{2} .
$$

Observe the similarity between the result for the $B$-quadrume of a disphenoid and Heron's formula for the area of a triangle in the classical Euclidean framework, which is highlighted by Klain [33].

By the Spread law, we will have three unique $B$-spreads corresponding to each vertex of the disphenoid. By the Quadrea spread theorem, these are evaluated to be

$$
\begin{aligned}
& s_{0 ; 12}=s_{1 ; 03}=s_{2 ; 03}=s_{3 ; 12}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 D_{1} D_{2}}, \\
& s_{0 ; 13}=s_{1 ; 02}=s_{2 ; 13}=s_{3 ; 02}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 D_{1} D_{3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
s_{0 ; 23}=s_{1 ; 23}=s_{2 ; 01}=s_{3 ; 01}=\frac{\mathcal{A}}{4 D_{2} D_{3}} .
$$

By the Dihedral spread theorem, the $B$-dihedral spreads of the disphenoid are

$$
E_{01}=E_{23}=\frac{4 D_{1} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}}, \quad E_{02}=E_{13}=\frac{4 D_{2} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{03}=E_{12}=\frac{4 D_{3} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}} .
$$

Hence, the $B$-dihedral crosses $C_{i j}=1-E_{i j}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, are

$$
C_{01}=C_{23}=\frac{L_{1}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}}, \quad C_{02}=C_{13}=\frac{L_{2}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}} \quad \text { and } \quad C_{03}=C_{12}=\frac{L_{3}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}},
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{1} & \equiv-3 D_{1}^{2}+D_{2}^{2}+D_{3}^{2}+2 D_{1} D_{2}+2 D_{1} D_{3}-2 D_{2} D_{3} \\
& =\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{1}^{2}+D_{2} D_{3}\right), \\
L_{2} & \equiv D_{1}^{2}-3 D_{2}^{2}+D_{3}^{2}+2 D_{1} D_{2}-2 D_{1} D_{3}+2 D_{2} D_{3} \\
& =\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{2}^{2}+D_{1} D_{3}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{3} & \equiv D_{1}^{2}+D_{2}^{2}-3 D_{3}^{2}-2 D_{1} D_{2}+2 D_{1} D_{3}+2 D_{2} D_{3} \\
& =\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{3}^{2}+D_{1} D_{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We make the following observation with regards to the disphenoid.
Lemma 49 If

$$
\begin{gathered}
L_{1} \equiv\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{1}^{2}+D_{2} D_{3}\right), \\
L_{2} \equiv\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{2}^{2}+D_{1} D_{3}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
L_{3} \equiv\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{3}^{2}+D_{1} D_{2}\right),
$$

then

$$
L_{1}+L_{2}+L_{3}=\mathcal{A}
$$

Proof. Directly calculate the sum of $L_{1}, L_{2}$ and $L_{3}$ to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
L_{1}+L_{2}+L_{3} & =3\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-4\left(D_{1}^{2}+D_{2}^{2}+D_{3}^{2}+D_{1} D_{2}+D_{1} D_{3}+D_{2} D_{3}\right) \\
& =\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)^{2}-2\left(D_{1}^{2}+D_{2}^{2}+D_{3}^{2}\right) \\
& =\mathcal{A},
\end{aligned}
$$

as required.
By the Solid spread theorem, the $B$-solid spreads of a disphenoid are

$$
\mathcal{S}_{0}=\mathcal{S}_{1}=\mathcal{S}_{2}=\mathcal{S}_{3}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4 D_{1} D_{2} D_{3}}
$$

Given that

$$
E_{01} E_{23}=\left(\frac{4 D_{1} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}}\right)^{2}, \quad E_{02} E_{13}=\left(\frac{4 D_{2} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}}\right)^{2} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{03} E_{12}=\left(\frac{4 D_{3} \mathcal{V}}{\mathcal{A}^{2}}\right)^{2}
$$

we have

$$
\frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=\frac{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{4}} .
$$

Hence, the Dihedral spread ratio theorem is verified for $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$. Since the $B$-quadreas of the triangles of the disphenoid are equal, by the Dual solid spread theorem,

$$
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\mathcal{D}_{1}=\mathcal{D}_{2}=\mathcal{D}_{3}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{3}}
$$

The Dual solid spread ratio theorem must hold by inspection, and the ratio of the $B$-dual solid spread to the quadrea is

$$
\frac{\mathcal{D}}{\mathcal{A}}=\frac{4 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{4}}=\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{16 \mathcal{V}^{2}}{\mathcal{A}^{4}}\right)
$$

By the Skew quadrance theorem, the $B$-skew quadrances of a disphenoid are

$$
R_{01 ; 23}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4\left[D_{1}^{2}-\left(D_{2}-D_{3}\right)^{2}\right]}=\frac{-D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}}{2}=\sigma-D_{1},
$$

$$
R_{02 ; 13}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4\left[D_{2}^{2}-\left(D_{1}-D_{3}\right)^{2}\right]}=\frac{D_{1}-D_{2}+D_{3}}{2}=\sigma-D_{2}
$$

and

$$
R_{03 ; 12}=\frac{\mathcal{V}}{4\left[D_{3}^{2}-\left(D_{1}-D_{2}\right)^{2}\right]}=\frac{D_{1}+D_{2}-D_{3}}{2}=\sigma-D_{3}
$$

As an aside, we observe that

$$
R_{01 ; 23}+R_{02 ; 13}+R_{03 ; 12}=3 \sigma-\left(D_{1}+D_{2}+D_{3}\right)=3 \sigma-2 \sigma=\sigma .
$$

With the $B$-dihedral crosses and $B$-quadreas evaluated above, the four relations given in the Tetrahedron cross law reduce to the single result

$$
256\left(\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-4\left(L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2}+L_{1}^{2} L_{3}^{2}+L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}=16384 \mathcal{A}^{2} L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2}
$$

which simplifies to

$$
\left(\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-4\left(L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2}+L_{1}^{2} L_{3}^{2}+L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}=64 \mathcal{A}^{2} L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2} .
$$

We can factor this result as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-4\left(L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2}+L_{1}^{2} L_{3}^{2}+L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-64 \mathcal{A}^{2} L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2} \\
= & \left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}+L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}+L_{2}-L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}-L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}-L_{2}-L_{3}\right) \\
& \times\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}+L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}+L_{2}-L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}-L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}-L_{2}-L_{3}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The result of Lemma 49 implies that $\mathcal{A}-L_{1}-L_{2}-L_{3}=0$. So,

$$
\left(\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-4\left(L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2}+L_{1}^{2} L_{3}^{2}+L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-64 \mathcal{A}^{2} L_{1}^{2} L_{2}^{2} L_{3}^{2}=0
$$

This gives us the desired result and hence the Tetrahedron cross law is verified for the disphenoid.

The variables in the Dihedral cross relation are

$$
\begin{gathered}
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}=\left(\frac{L_{1}}{\mathcal{A}}\right)^{4}, \quad Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}=\left(\frac{L_{2}}{\mathcal{A}}\right)^{4}, \quad Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}=\left(\frac{L_{3}}{\mathcal{A}}\right)^{4}, \\
x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}=2\left(\frac{L_{1}}{\mathcal{A}}\right)^{2}, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}=2\left(\frac{L_{2}}{\mathcal{A}}\right)^{2}, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12}=2\left(\frac{L_{3}}{\mathcal{A}}\right)^{2}, \\
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}=4\left(\frac{L_{1} L_{2} L_{3}}{\mathcal{A}^{3}}\right)^{2},
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z) \\
=\frac{1}{2 \mathcal{A}^{4}}\left[\mathcal{A}^{4}-2\left(L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right) \mathcal{A}^{2}+\left(L_{1}^{4}+L_{2}^{4}+L_{3}^{4}\right)\right], \\
R \equiv P+z-Z=\frac{1}{2 \mathcal{A}^{4}}\left[\mathcal{A}^{4}-2\left(L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}-L_{3}^{2}\right) \mathcal{A}^{2}+\left(L_{1}^{4}+L_{2}^{4}-L_{3}^{4}\right)\right], \\
S \equiv P+y-Y=\frac{1}{2 \mathcal{A}^{4}}\left[\mathcal{A}^{4}-2\left(L_{1}^{2}-L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right) \mathcal{A}^{2}+\left(L_{1}^{4}-L_{2}^{4}+L_{3}^{4}\right)\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
T \equiv P+x-X=\frac{1}{2 \mathcal{A}^{4}}\left[\mathcal{A}^{4}-2\left(-L_{1}^{2}+L_{2}^{2}+L_{3}^{2}\right) \mathcal{A}^{2}+\left(-L_{1}^{4}+L_{2}^{4}+L_{3}^{4}\right)\right] .
$$

Furthermore defining

$$
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right)
$$

we can substitute the above variables and use a computer to obtain the remarkable factorisation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& V^{2}-X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right) \\
= & \frac{1}{16384 \mathcal{A}^{32}}\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}+L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}+L_{2}-L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}-L_{2}+L_{3}\right) \\
& \times\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}+L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}-L_{1}-L_{2}-L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}+L_{2}-L_{3}\right) \\
& \times\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}-L_{2}+L_{3}\right)\left(\mathcal{A}+L_{1}-L_{2}-L_{3}\right) \\
& \times\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}+L_{2}\right)^{2}-L_{3}^{2}\right)^{2}\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}+L_{3}\right)^{2}-L_{2}^{2}\right)^{2} \\
& \times\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{2}+L_{3}\right)^{2}-L_{1}^{2}\right)^{2}\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}-L_{2}\right)^{2}-L_{3}^{2}\right)^{2} \\
& \times\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{1}-L_{3}\right)^{2}-L_{2}^{2}\right)^{2}\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}-\left(L_{2}-L_{3}\right)^{2}-L_{1}^{2}\right)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

As Lemma 49 implies that $\mathcal{A}-L_{1}-L_{2}-L_{3}=0$ and thus

$$
V^{2}-X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right)=0 .
$$

Thus we have the Dihedral cross relation for the disphenoid.

### 4.3 Trirectangular tetrahedron

For a general tetrahedron $\overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, let $v_{i} \equiv \overrightarrow{A_{0} A_{i}}$ (for $\left.i=1,2,3\right)$ and suppose that $v_{1}$, $v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ are mutually $B$-perpendicular, i.e.

$$
v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}=v_{1} \cdot{ }_{B} v_{3}=v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}=0 .
$$

Then we say that $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is a trirectangular tetrahedron. This tetrahedron is mentioned in Altshiller-Court [1, pp. 91-94]. With such a property, we use the definition of the $B$-spread to obtain

$$
s_{0 ; 12}=1-\frac{\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{2}\right)}=1,
$$

and similarly

$$
s_{0 ; 13}=s_{0 ; 23}=1 .
$$

Furthermore, we use the Binet-Cauchy identity to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
E_{01} & =1-\frac{\left(\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) \cdot{ }_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)} \\
& =1-\frac{\left(\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{1}\right)\left(v_{2} \cdot B v_{3}\right)-\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{2}\right)\left(v_{1} \cdot B v_{3}\right)\right)^{2}}{Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{2}\right) Q_{B}\left(v_{1} \times_{B} v_{3}\right)} \\
& =1,
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly

$$
E_{02}=E_{03}=1 .
$$

Hence $\mathcal{S}_{0}=1$ by the Solid spread projective theorem.
We can parameterise the trirectangular tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ by defining

$$
Q_{01} \equiv G_{1}, \quad Q_{02} \equiv G_{2} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{03} \equiv G_{3} .
$$

Because the edges emanating from $A_{0}$ are mutually $B$-perpendicular, we use Pythagoras' theorem to evaluate the other $B$-quadrances as

$$
Q_{12}=G_{1}+G_{2}, \quad Q_{13}=G_{1}+G_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{23}=G_{2}+G_{3} .
$$

We illustrate a trirectangular tetrahedron with these $B$-quadrances in Figure 4.3.


Figure 4.3: Trirectangular tetrahedron $B$-perpendicular at $A_{0}$

Using Pythagoras' theorem, we can simplify the calculations of the $B$-quadrume of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ to get

$$
\mathcal{V}=\frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
2 G_{1} & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 G_{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 2 G_{3}
\end{array}\right|=4 G_{1} G_{2} G_{3}
$$

We use the property that $s_{0 ; 12}=s_{0 ; 13}=s_{0 ; 23}=1$ and the Quadrea spread theorem to obtain

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012}=4 G_{1} G_{2}, \quad \mathcal{A}_{013}=4 G_{1} G_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{023}=4 G_{2} G_{3}
$$

To compute $\mathcal{A}_{123}$, we make a key observation regarding trirectangular tetrahedra, which extends a known result of de Gua de Malves (1783) [17] to arbitrary symmetric bilinear forms.

Theorem 50 (de Gua's theorem) For a trirectangular tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ which is $B$-perpendicular at $A_{0}$ with $B$-quadreas $\mathcal{A}_{012}, \mathcal{A}_{013}, \mathcal{A}_{023}$ and $\mathcal{A}_{123}$, the relation

$$
\mathcal{A}_{123}=\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}
$$

is satisfied.
Proof. We start with the Tetrahedron cross law

$$
\left.\left.\begin{array}{rl} 
& \binom{\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}}{\left(-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)\right.}^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2}\right)
$$

Since we have that $E_{01}=E_{02}=E_{03}=1$, we can deduce that the $B$-dihedral crosses are

$$
C_{01}=C_{02}=C_{03}=0
$$

and hence our result degenerates to

$$
\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{8}=0 .
$$

Solve for $\mathcal{A}_{123}$ to get

$$
\mathcal{A}_{123}=\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}
$$

This result is also alluded to by Cho in [10] and [11]. Defining

$$
H \equiv G_{1} G_{2}+G_{1} G_{3}+G_{2} G_{3},
$$

we then have that

$$
\mathcal{A}_{123}=4 H
$$

We use the Quadrea spread theorem to obtain the $B$-spreads for $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, which are

$$
\begin{gathered}
s_{0 ; 12}=1, \quad s_{1 ; 02}=\frac{G_{2}}{G_{1}+G_{2}}, \quad s_{2 ; 01}=\frac{G_{1}}{G_{1}+G_{2}}, \\
s_{0 ; 13}=1, \quad s_{1 ; 03}=\frac{G_{3}}{G_{1}+G_{3}}, \quad s_{3 ; 01}=\frac{G_{1}}{G_{1}+G_{3}}, \\
s_{0 ; 23}=1, \quad s_{2 ; 03}=\frac{G_{3}}{G_{2}+G_{3}}, \quad s_{3 ; 02}=\frac{G_{2}}{G_{2}+G_{3}}, \\
s_{1 ; 23}=\frac{S}{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right)\left(G_{1}+G_{3}\right)}, \quad s_{2 ; 13}=\frac{S}{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right)\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right)}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
s_{3 ; 12}=\frac{S}{\left(G_{1}+G_{3}\right)\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right)} .
$$

By the Dihedral spread theorem, the $B$-dihedral spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& E_{01}=1, \quad E_{23}=\frac{\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right) G_{1}}{S} \\
& E_{02}=1, \quad E_{13}=\frac{\left(G_{1}+G_{3}\right) G_{2}}{S} \\
& E_{03}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad E_{12}=\frac{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right) G_{3}}{S} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Solid spread theorem, the $B$-solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{S}_{0}=1, \quad \mathcal{S}_{1}=\frac{G_{2} G_{3}}{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right)\left(G_{1}+G_{3}\right)}, \\
\mathcal{S}_{2}=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right)\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right)} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3}=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right)\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right)} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Given that

$$
E_{01} E_{23}=\frac{\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right) G_{1}}{S}, \quad E_{02} E_{13}=\frac{\left(G_{1}+G_{3}\right) G_{2}}{S} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{03} E_{12}=\frac{\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right) G_{3}}{S},
$$

we have

$$
\frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=\frac{1}{S} .
$$

As a result, we use the Dual solid spread ratio theorem to obtain the $B$-dual solid spread of the trirectangular tetrahedron, which are

$$
\mathcal{D}_{0}=1, \quad \mathcal{D}_{1}=\frac{G_{2} G_{3}}{S}, \quad \mathcal{D}_{2}=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{S} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3}=\frac{G_{1} G_{2}}{S} .
$$

Observe that

$$
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\mathcal{D}_{1}+\mathcal{D}_{2}+\mathcal{D}_{3} .
$$

This is a direct consequence of de Gua's theorem and the Dual solid spread ratio theorem.
By the Skew quadrance theorem, we can compute the $B$-skew quadrances of a trirec-
tangular tetrahedron to be

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{01 ; 23} & =\frac{4 G_{1} G_{2} G_{3}}{4 G_{1}\left(G_{2}+G_{3}\right)}=\frac{G_{2} G_{3}}{G_{2}+G_{3}} \\
R_{02 ; 13} & =\frac{4 G_{1} G_{2} G_{3}}{4 G_{2}\left(G_{1}+G_{3}\right)}=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{G_{1}+G_{3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
R_{03 ; 12}=\frac{4 G_{1} G_{2} G_{3}}{4 G_{3}\left(G_{1}+G_{2}\right)}=\frac{G_{1} G_{2}}{G_{1}+G_{2}} .
$$

We saw that one of the results of the Tetrahedron cross law implied de Gua's theorem. As an exercise, let us verify one of the other results of the Tetrahedron cross law, say

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\begin{array}{c}
\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{123}-\mathcal{A}_{023}\right)^{2} \\
\left(\begin{array}{c} 
\\
-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{123} C_{12}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123} C_{13}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{12}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{13}+\mathcal{A}_{123} C_{12} C_{13}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
& =4096 \mathcal{A}_{012}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{013}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{123}^{2} C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{123}-\mathcal{A}_{023}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note if this result is true, the other two results follow by symmetry and hence the Tetrahedron cross law is verified for a trirectangular tetrahedron. We start with the $B$-dihedral crosses

$$
C_{01}=0, \quad C_{12}=\frac{G_{1} G_{2}}{S} \quad \text { and } \quad C_{13}=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{S}
$$

We deduce that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{123}-\mathcal{A}_{023}=8\left(G_{1} G_{2}+G_{1} G_{3}\right), \\
\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{123} C_{12}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123} C_{13}=16\left(G_{1}^{2} G_{2}^{2}+G_{1}^{2} G_{3}^{2}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{12}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{13}+\mathcal{A}_{123} C_{12} C_{13}\right)=256 G_{1}^{4} G_{2}^{2} G_{3}^{2}
$$

Since $C_{01}=0$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\begin{array}{c}
\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{123}-\mathcal{A}_{023}\right)^{2} \\
\left(\begin{array}{c} 
\\
-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{123} C_{12}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123} C_{13}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{123}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{12}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{13}+\mathcal{A}_{123} C_{12} C_{13}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
= & 2^{24}\left(\left(\left(G_{1} G_{2}+G_{1} G_{3}\right)^{2}-\left(G_{1}^{2} G_{2}^{2}+G_{1}^{2} G_{3}^{2}\right)\right)^{2}-4 G_{1}^{4} G_{2}^{2} G_{3}^{2}\right)^{2}=0 \\
= & 4096 \mathcal{A}_{012}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{013}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{123}^{2} C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{123}-\mathcal{A}_{023}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

So, the result holds and by symmetry the Tetrahedron cross law is verified for a trirectangular tetrahedron.

Define the variables

$$
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}=0, \quad Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}=0, \quad Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}=0
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}=\frac{G_{1} G_{2}}{S}, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{S}, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12}=\frac{G_{2} G_{3}}{S}, \\
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}=0, \\
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z)=0, \\
R \equiv P+z-Z=\frac{G_{1} G_{2}}{S}, \quad S \equiv P+y-Y=\frac{G_{1} G_{3}}{S}, \quad T \equiv P+x-X=\frac{G_{2} G_{3}}{S}, \\
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)=0
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right)=0 .
$$

Thus

$$
V^{2}=X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right)=0 .
$$

So, the Dihedral cross relation trivially holds for a trirectangular tetrahedron.

### 4.4 A relativistic example

Consider $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ over the rational number field, and equip a symmetric bilinear form on its associated vector space $\mathbb{V}^{3}$ (over the rational number field) defined by

$$
\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right) \cdot B\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)=x_{1} x_{2}+y_{1} y_{2}-z_{1} z_{2} .
$$

This scalar product is called the relativistic scalar product or the Minkowski scalar product [40], and we can represent this symmetric bilinear form by the matrix

$$
B \equiv\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Suppose we have a tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ in $\mathbb{A}^{3}$ with points

$$
A_{0} \equiv[0,0,0], \quad A_{1} \equiv[1,2,3], \quad A_{2} \equiv[-2,1,-1] \quad \text { and } \quad A_{3} \equiv[0,-2,1] .
$$

The $B$-quadrance $Q_{01}$ is

$$
Q_{01}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 2 & 3
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
2 \\
3
\end{array}\right)=-4 .
$$

Similarly, the remaining $B$-quadrances of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
Q_{02}=4, \quad Q_{03}=3, \quad Q_{23}=9, \quad Q_{13}=13 \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12}=-6 .
$$

The $B$-quadreas of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are then

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012}=(-4+4-6)^{2}-2(16+16+36)=-100
$$

and similarly

$$
\mathcal{A}_{013}=-244, \quad \mathcal{A}_{023}=44 \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{123}=-316 .
$$

The $B$-quadrume of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is

$$
\mathcal{V}=\frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
-8 & 0+6 & -1-13 \\
0+6 & 8 & 7-9 \\
-1-13 & 7-9 & 6
\end{array}\right|=-900
$$

By the Quadrea spread theorem,

$$
s_{0 ; 12}=\frac{-100}{4 \times(-4) \times 4}=\frac{25}{16} .
$$

The remaining $B$-spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\begin{gathered}
s_{1 ; 02}=-\frac{25}{24}, \quad s_{2 ; 01}=\frac{25}{24}, \\
s_{0 ; 13}=\frac{61}{12}, \quad s_{1 ; 03}=\frac{61}{52}, \quad s_{3 ; 01}=-\frac{61}{39}, \\
s_{0 ; 23}=\frac{11}{12}, \quad s_{2 ; 03}=\frac{11}{36}, \quad s_{3 ; 02}=\frac{11}{27}, \\
s_{1 ; 23}=\frac{79}{78}, \quad s_{2 ; 13}=\frac{79}{54} \quad \text { and } \quad s_{3 ; 12}=-\frac{79}{117} .
\end{gathered}
$$

By the Dihedral spread theorem, we have that

$$
E_{01}=\frac{4 \times(-4) \times(-900)}{(-100)(-244)}=\frac{36}{61}
$$

and similarly the remaining $B$-dihedral spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{02}=\frac{36}{11}, \quad E_{03}=\frac{675}{671}, \\
E_{23}=\frac{2025}{869}, \quad E_{13}=-\frac{2925}{4819} \quad \text { and } E_{12}=\frac{54}{79} .
\end{gathered}
$$

The $B$-dihedral crosses $C_{i j} \equiv 1-E_{i j}$ of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C_{01}=\frac{25}{61}, \quad C_{02}=-\frac{25}{11}, \quad C_{03}=-\frac{4}{671}, \\
& C_{23}=-\frac{1156}{869}, \quad C_{13}=\frac{7744}{4819} \quad \text { and } \quad C_{12}=\frac{25}{79} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Solid spread theorem, the $B$-solid spread $\mathcal{S}_{0}$ is

$$
\mathcal{S}_{0}=\frac{-900}{4 \times(-4) \times 4 \times 3}=\frac{75}{16} .
$$

Similarly, the remaining $B$-solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\mathcal{S}_{1}=-\frac{75}{104}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{2}=\frac{25}{24} \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3}=-\frac{25}{39} .
$$

Note the non-standard outputs obtained in our calculations above; in the relativistic bilinear form, we have $B$-quadrance outputs that end up being less than 0 and $B$-spread outputs outside the usual range of 0 to 1 , which is normally the case in Euclidean geometry. This is an important possibility of working with arbitrary symmetric bilinear forms.

We compute

$$
E_{01} E_{23}=\frac{72900}{53009}, \quad E_{02} E_{13}=-\frac{105300}{53009} \quad \text { and } \quad E_{03} E_{12}=\frac{36450}{53009},
$$

as well as

$$
Q_{01} Q_{23}=-36, \quad Q_{02} Q_{13}=52 \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{03} Q_{12}=-18
$$

so that

$$
\frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=-\frac{2025}{53009} .
$$

We have thus verified the Dihedral spread ratio theorem for $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, and from this we can deduce the Richardson number to be

$$
K=-\frac{53009}{2025} .
$$

We use the Dual solid spread ratio theorem to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{D}_{0}=\left(-\frac{2025}{53009}\right) \times(-79)=\frac{2025}{671}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{1}=\left(-\frac{2025}{53009}\right) \times 11=-\frac{2025}{4819}, \\
& \mathcal{D}_{2}=\left(-\frac{2025}{53009}\right) \times(-61)=\frac{2025}{869}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{D}_{3}=\left(-\frac{2025}{53009}\right) \times(-25)=\frac{50625}{53009} .
$$

We use the Skew quadrance theorem to obtain

$$
R_{01 ; 23}=\frac{-900}{4 \times(-36)-(17+3)^{2}}=\frac{225}{136},
$$

$$
R_{02 ; 13}=\frac{-900}{4 \times 52-(5+3)^{2}}=-\frac{25}{4}
$$

and

$$
R_{03 ; 12}=\frac{-900}{4 \times(-18)-(5-17)^{2}}=\frac{25}{6} .
$$

We proceed to verify one of the results of the Tetrahedron cross law, say

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\begin{array}{c}
\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2} \\
\left(\begin{array}{c} 
\\
-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
& =4096 \mathcal{A}_{012}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{013}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{023}^{2} C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

With the quantities we evaluated above, we have that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}=16, \\
\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}=20064, \\
\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)=101280000
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{013}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{023}^{2} C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}=1638400000000 .
$$

So

$$
\left.\begin{array}{rl} 
& \binom{\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}}{-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)}^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} .
$$

We perform similar calculations for the remaining results of the Tetrahedron cross law, which then enables us to verify the Tetrahedron cross law for the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$.

The variables required for the Dihedral cross relation are

$$
\begin{gathered}
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}=-\frac{28900}{53009}, \quad Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}=-\frac{17600}{4819}, \quad Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}=-\frac{100}{53009}, \\
x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}=-\frac{48791}{53009}, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}=-\frac{35291}{53009}, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12}=\frac{16459}{53009}, \\
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}=\frac{3325473256}{2809954081},
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z)=-\frac{50984}{53009}, \quad R \equiv P+z-Z=-\frac{34425}{53009}, \\
S \equiv P+y-Y=\frac{107325}{53009}, \quad T \equiv P+x-X=-\frac{70875}{53009} \\
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)=\frac{2445592500}{2809954081}
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right)=-\frac{35463189150000000}{717803812484414051} .
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
V^{2} & =\frac{1257637784688677722500000000000000}{515242313217159849022981796806230601} \\
& =X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, the Dihedral cross relation holds for the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$.

### 4.5 An example over $\mathbb{F}_{11}$

Consider the affine 3 -space $\left(\mathbb{A}^{3}\right)$ over the finite field $\mathbb{F}_{11}$, whose elements will be represented by integers between -5 and 5 and whose operations will be represented by the main integer operations modulo 11. Equip its associated vector space with the symmetric bilinear form defined by the Euclidean scalar product

$$
\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, z_{1}\right) \cdot\left(x_{2}, y_{2}, z_{2}\right)=x_{1} x_{2}+y_{1} y_{2}+z_{1} z_{2} .
$$

Here, we will consider the same tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ with the same points as in the previous example, where

$$
A_{0} \equiv[0,0,0], \quad A_{1} \equiv[1,2,3], \quad A_{2} \equiv[-2,1,-1] \quad \text { and } \quad A_{3} \equiv[0,-2,1] .
$$

As is the case with the rational trigonometry of the Khafre tetrahedron, we are allowed to omit the $B$ prefix from the trigonometric quantities because we are dealing with the Euclidean scalar product, where $B$ is the $3 \times 3$ identity matrix.

The quadrance $Q_{01}$ is given by

$$
Q_{01}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
1 & 2 & 3
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{l}
1 \\
2 \\
3
\end{array}\right)=1+4-2=3
$$

Similarly, the remaining quadrances of the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
Q_{02}=-5, \quad Q_{03}=5, \quad Q_{23}=-5, \quad Q_{13}=-1 \quad \text { and } \quad Q_{12}=4 .
$$

Furthermore, we have that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A}_{012} & =A(3,-5,4)=2^{2}-2(-2+3+5) \\
& =4-2(-5)=14=3
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly the remaining quadreas of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\mathcal{A}_{013}=1, \quad \mathcal{A}_{023}=-4 \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{A}_{123}=-3 .
$$

The quadrume of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ is

$$
\mathcal{V}=\frac{1}{2}\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
-5 & 3-5-4 & 3+5+1 \\
3-5-4 & 1 & -5+5+5 \\
3+5+1 & -5+5+5 & -1
\end{array}\right|=\frac{-455}{2}=\frac{-4}{2}=-2
$$

By the Quadrea spread theorem,

$$
s_{0 ; 12}=\frac{3}{4 \times 3 \times(-5)}=\frac{1}{2}=-5 .
$$

The remaining spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\begin{gathered}
s_{1 ; 02}=\frac{1}{5}=-2, \quad s_{2 ; 01}=-\frac{3}{3}=-1, \\
s_{0 ; 13}=\frac{1}{5}=-2, \quad s_{1 ; 03}=-\frac{1}{1}=-1, \quad s_{3 ; 01}=\frac{1}{2}=-5, \\
s_{0 ; 23}=\frac{1}{3}=4, \quad s_{2 ; 03}=-\frac{1}{3}=-4, \quad s_{3 ; 02}=\frac{1}{3}=4, \\
s_{1 ; 23}=\frac{3}{5}=5, \quad s_{2 ; 13}=\frac{3}{3}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad s_{3 ; 12}=\frac{3}{2}=-4 .
\end{gathered}
$$

By the Dihedral spread theorem, we have that

$$
E_{01}=\frac{4 \times 3 \times(-2)}{3 \times 1}=-8=3
$$

as well as

$$
\begin{gathered}
E_{02}=\frac{1}{3}=4, \quad E_{03}=10=-1, \quad E_{23}=\frac{10}{3}=-4, \\
E_{13}-=-\frac{8}{3}=1 \quad \text { and } \quad E_{12}=\frac{32}{9}=-5 .
\end{gathered}
$$

From the above results, the dihedral crosses $C_{i j} \equiv 1-E_{i j}$ of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$, for $0 \leq i<j \leq 3$, are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C_{01}=-2, \quad C_{02}=-3, \quad C_{03}=2, \\
& C_{23}=5, \quad C_{13}=0 \quad \text { and } \quad C_{12}=-5 .
\end{aligned}
$$

By the Solid spread theorem,

$$
\mathcal{S}_{0}=\frac{-2}{4 \times 3 \times(-5) \times 5}=\frac{1}{-4}=-3
$$

and thus the remaining solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\mathcal{S}_{1}=\frac{1}{-3}=-4, \quad \mathcal{S}_{2}=\frac{1}{3}=4 \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{S}_{3}=\frac{1}{5}=-2 .
$$

Given that

$$
E_{01} E_{23}=-1, \quad E_{02} E_{13}=4 \quad \text { and } \quad E_{03} E_{12}=5,
$$

we observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{E_{01} E_{23}}{Q_{01} Q_{23}}=\frac{1}{4}=3, \\
& \frac{E_{02} E_{13}}{Q_{02} Q_{13}}=\frac{4}{5}=3
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\frac{E_{03} E_{12}}{Q_{03} Q_{12}}=\frac{1}{4}=3 .
$$

As all ratios are equal, the Dihedral spread ratio theorem is verified for $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$. Given that

$$
K=\frac{1}{3}=4
$$

and

$$
\frac{1}{4 K}=\frac{1}{4 \times 4}=-2,
$$

we have by the Dual solid spread ratio theorem

$$
\mathcal{D}_{0}=\frac{-3}{-2}=-4
$$

and similarly the remaining dual solid spreads of $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ are

$$
\mathcal{D}_{1}=2, \quad \mathcal{D}_{2}=5 \quad \text { and } \quad \mathcal{D}_{3}=4 .
$$

We will now verify one of the results of the Tetrahedron cross law, say

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(\begin{array}{c}
\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2} \\
\left(\begin{array}{c} 
\\
-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)
\end{array}\right)^{2} \\
& =\quad 4096 \mathcal{A}_{012}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{013}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{023}^{2} C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

With the quantities we defined in this section, we deduce that

$$
\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}=3,
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}=0, \\
\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)=-5,
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
4096 \mathcal{A}_{1}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{2}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{3}^{2} C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}\left(\mathcal{A}_{1}+\mathcal{A}_{2}+\mathcal{A}_{3}-\mathcal{A}_{0}\right)^{2}=3
$$

So,

$$
\begin{gathered}
4096 \mathcal{A}_{012}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{013}^{2} \mathcal{A}_{023}^{2} C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}=(4+2 \times(-5))^{2}=36=3 \\
=\left(\begin{array}{c}
\left.\left(\left(\mathcal{A}_{012}+\mathcal{A}_{013}+\mathcal{A}_{023}-\mathcal{A}_{123}\right)^{2}-4\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01}+\mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023} C_{03}\right)\right)^{2}\right)^{2} \\
-64 \mathcal{A}_{012} \mathcal{A}_{013} \mathcal{A}_{023}\left(\mathcal{A}_{012} C_{01} C_{02}+\mathcal{A}_{013} C_{01} C_{03}+\mathcal{A}_{023} C_{02} C_{03}\right)
\end{array} . . .\right.
\end{gathered}
$$

We can perform similar calculation for the other results, which would enable us to verify the Tetrahedron cross law for $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$.

Define the variables

$$
\begin{gathered}
X \equiv C_{01} C_{23}=(-2) \times 5=1, \quad x \equiv C_{01}+C_{23}=-2+5=3, \\
Y \equiv C_{02} C_{13}=0 \times(-3)=0, \quad y \equiv C_{02}+C_{13}=0-3=-3, \\
Z \equiv C_{03} C_{12}=2 \times(-5)=1, \quad z \equiv C_{03}+C_{12}=2-5=-3, \\
W \equiv C_{01} C_{02} C_{03}+C_{01} C_{12} C_{13}+C_{02} C_{12} C_{23}+C_{03} C_{13} C_{23}=1-2=-1, \\
P \equiv \frac{1}{2}(1-x-y-z+X+Y+Z)=\frac{1-(-3)+2}{2}=3, \\
R \equiv P+z-Z=3-3-1=-1, \quad S \equiv P+y-Y=3-3+0=0, \\
T \equiv P+x-X=3+3-1=5, \\
U \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(P^{2}-W+X Y+X Z+Y Z\right)=\frac{-2+1+1}{2}=0
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
V \equiv \frac{1}{2}\left(U^{2}-X Y R^{2}-X Z S^{2}-Y Z T^{2}\right)=0
$$

As $Y=0$,

$$
V^{2}=X Y Z\left(X R^{2} S^{2}+Y R^{2} T^{2}+Z S^{2} T^{2}+2 R S T U\right)=0 .
$$

So, the Dihedral cross relation holds for the tetrahedron $\overline{A_{0} A_{1} A_{2} A_{3}}$ over $\mathbb{F}_{11}$.

## Afterword

We are able to extend the framework in this thesis to set up a framework for trigonometry over higher-dimensional spaces. Most naturally, we can start with the four-dimensional affine space $\mathbb{A}^{4}$ over a field $\mathbb{F}$ with characteristic not equal to 2 . While the definitions of quadrance, quadrea and quadrume naturally extend from the contents of this thesis, we are also able to talk about a hyperquadrume associated to a 4 -simplex in $\mathbb{A}^{4}$. The CayleyMenger determinant, as discussed earlier, provides a natural framework by which we can define metrical quantities not only in $\mathbb{A}^{4}$ but also for higher-dimensional affine spaces $\mathbb{A}^{4}$ over arbitrary fields not of characteristic 2 . As for the spreads and their higher-dimensional counterparts, the recent paper by Wildberger in 2017 [62] gives an insight as to how to calculate spreads between planes in four-dimensional space; we may naturally extend such a concept to calculating spreads between objects of $k$ dimensions in $n$-dimensional space, for $k \leq n$.

Furthermore, we can extend the framework in this thesis to understand the trigonometry of a projective or hyperbolic tetrahedron. Here, we can build on from the framework of projective planar trigonometry in this thesis to discuss the projective tetrahedron in the three-dimensional projective space $\mathbb{P}^{3}$. One aspect of setting up this framework involves calculation of the various types of spreads for this tetrahedron. Of more interest to current literature, however, is the calculation of the projective quadrume, or in the classical case the volume, of the projective/hyperbolic tetrahedron. This concept has been explored in independent works by Cho and Kim [12], Derevnin and Mednykh [18], Horvath [29], Molnár [41], Murakami and Yano [43], and Ushijima [54]. Whether there is a rational analog to this quantity has yet to be explored.

An interesting problem that one may come up with from reading this thesis is to find a possible relationship between the solid spreads of a tetrahedron in three-dimensional affine space, in a similar flavour to that of the Dihedral cross relation. With the framework set up in this thesis, one is poised to apply the techniques and tools here to various modern three-dimensional problems in robotics, animation, video games, physics, engineering and surveying.

## Bibliography

[1] Altshiller-Court, N. (1979). Modern Pure Solid Geometry. New York, NY: Chelsea Pub. Co.
[2] Anton, H. \& Rorres, C. (2005). Elementary Linear Algebra with Applications (9th ed.). Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley \& Sons, Inc.
[3] Audet, D. (2011). Déterminants sphérique et hyperbolique de Cayley-Menger. Bulletin AMQ, 51(2), 45-52.
[4] Belifante, J. G. F. \& Kolman, B. (1972). A Survey of Lie Groups and Lie Algebras with Applications and Computational Methods. Philadelphia, PA: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics.
[5] Binet, J. F. M. (1812). Mémoire sur un systeme de formules analytiques, et leur application à des considerations géométriques. Journal École Polytechnique, 9, 280302.
[6] Bretschneider, C. A. (1842). Untersuchung der trigonometrischen Relationen des geradlinigen Viereckes. Archiv der Mathematik und Physik, 2, 225-261.
[7] Brualdi, R. A. \& Schneider, H. (1983). Determinantal identities: Gauss, Schur, Cauchy, Sylvester, Kronecker, Jacobi, Binet, Laplace, Muir, and Cayley. Linear Algebra and its Applications. 52-53, 769-791.
[8] Cauchy, A. (1815). Memoire sur les fonctions qui ne peuvent obtenir que deux valeurs égales et des signes contraires par suite des transpositions opérées entre les variables qu'elles renferment. Journal École Polytechnique, 17, 29-112.
[9] Chapman, S. \& Milne, E. A. (1939). The proof of the formula for the vector triple product. The Mathematical Gazette, 23(253), 35-38.
[10] Cho, E. C. (1991). The generalised cross product and the volume of a simplex. Applied Mathematics Letters, 4(6), 51-53.
[11] Cho, E. C. (1995). The volume of a tetrahedron. Applied Mathematics Letters, 8(2), 71-73.
[12] Cho, Y. \& Kim, H. (1999). On the volume formula for hyperbolic tetrahedra. Discrete Computational Geometry, 22, 347-366.
[13] Claggett, M. (1999). Ancient Egyptian Science: A Source Book, Vol III: Ancient Egyptian Mathematics. Philadelphia, PA: American Philosophical Society.
[14] Collomb, C. (n.d.). A tutorial on inverting 3 by 3 matrices with cross products. Retrieved from http://www.emptyloop.com/technotes.
[15] Coolidge, J. L. (1939). A historically interesting formula for the area of a quadrilateral. The American Monthly, 46(6), 345-347.
[16] Coxeter, H. S. M. (1993). The Real Projective Plane (3rd ed.). New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.
[17] de Gua de Malves, J. P. (1783). Propositions neuves \& non moins utiles que curieuses, sur le tètraédre. Histoire de l'Academie royale des sciences (volume for 1783), 363-402.
[18] Derevnin, D. A. \& Mednykh, A. D. (2005). A formula for the volume of a hyperbolic tetrahedron. Russian Mathematical Surveys, 60(2), 159-160.
[19] Dörrie, H. (1965). 100 Great Problems of Elementary Mathematics (D. Antin, Trans.). Toronto, ON: Dover Publications Inc. (Original work published 1958).
[20] Egyptian Architecture - Khafre's Pyramid, Giza. (n.d.). Retrieved from http://www.essential-architecture.com/ASIA-WEST/NA-EG/NA-EG-026.htm.
[21] Gantmacher, F. R. (2000). The Theory of Matrices (Vol. 1) (K. A. Hirsch, Trans.). Providence, RI: AMS Chelsea Publishing. (Original work published 1959).
[22] Gibbs, J. W. \& Wilson, E. B. (1901). Vector Analysis: A text-book for the use of students of mathematics and physics founded upon the lectures of J. Willard Gibbs. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.
[23] Gillings, R. J. (1982). Mathematics in the Time of the Pharaohs. New York, NY: Dover Publications.
[24] Granville, W. A. (1909). Duality in the formulas of spherical trigonometry. The American Mathematical Monthly, 16(3), 47-53.
[25] Havlicek, H. \& Weiß, G. (2003). Altitudes of a tetrahedron and traceless quadratic forms. American Mathematical Monthly, 110(8), 679-693.
[26] Heath, T. L. (1956). The Thirteen Books of Euclid's Elements. New York, NY: Dover Publishing Inc.
[27] Heath, T. L. (1921). A History of Greek Mathematics, Volume 2: From Aristarchus to Diophantus. Oxford, England: Clarendon Press.
[28] Hilbert, D. \& Cohn-Vossen, S. (1952). Geometry and the Imagination (P. Nemenyi, Trans.). Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society Chelsea Publishing.
[29] Horváth, Á. G. (2012). Formulas on hyperbolic volume. Aequationes mathematicae, 83, 97-116
[30] Humphreys, J. E. (1972). Introduction to Lie Algebras and Representation Theory. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag.
[31] Jacobi, C. G. J. (1829). Fundamenta Nova Theoriae Functionum Ellipticarum. Paris, France: Pontrieu \& Co. and Treuttel \& Wuerz.
[32] Khafre (n.d.). In Encyclopaedia Britannica online. Retrieved from https://www.britannica.com/place/Khafre-pyramid-Egypt.
[33] Klain, D. A. (2004). An intuitive derivation of Heron's formula. American Mathematical Monthly, 111(8), 709-712.
[34] Lagrange, J. L. (1773). Solutions analytiques de quelques problèmes sur les pyramides triangulaires. Oeuvres de Lagrange, 3, 661-692.
[35] Le, N. H. (2015). Four-Fold Symmetry in Universal Triangle Geometry. Doctoral thesis for the School of Mathematics \& Statistics, UNSW Sydney.
[36] Le, N. H. \& Wildberger, N. J. (2014). Incenter circles, chromogeometry, and the Omega triangle. $K o G, 18,5-18$.
[37] Lee, J. R. (1997). The law of cosines in a tetrahedron. Journal of the Korean Mathematical Society, Education Series B: The Pure and Applied Mathematics, 4(1), 1-6.
[38] Leech, J. (1950). Some properties of the isosceles tetrahedron. The Mathematical Gazette, 24(310), 269-271.
[39] Milnor, J. \& Husemoller, D. (1973) Symmetric Bilinear Forms. Berlin, Germany: Springer-Verlag.
[40] Minkowski, H. (1907). Das Relativitätsprinzip. Annalen der Physik, 352(15), 927-938.
[41] Molnár, E. (1989) Projective metrics and hyperbolic space. Annales Universitatis Scientiarum Budapestinensis de Rolando Eötvös Nominatae: Sectio Mathematica, 32, 127-157.
[42] Moritz, R. E. (1913). A Text-book on Spherical Trigonometry. New York, NY: John Wiley \& Sons Inc.
[43] Murakami, J. \& Yano, M. (2005). On the volume of a hyperbolic and spherical tetrahedron. Communications in Analysis and Geometry, 13(2), 379-400.
[44] Pyramids of Giza (n.d.). In Encyclopaedia Britannica online. Retrieved from https://www.britannica.com/topic/Pyramids-of-Giza.
[45] Richardson, G. (1902). The trigonometry of a tetrahedron. The Mathematical Gazette, 2(32), 149-158.
[46] Smith, J. \& Henderson, M. (1985). Tetrahedra, skew lines, and volume. The College Mathematics Journal, 16(2), 138-140.
[47] Sommerville, D. M. Y. (1958). An Introduction to the Geometry of n Dimensions. New York, NY: Dover Publishing Inc.
[48] Spiegel, M. R. (1959). Schaum's Outline of Vector Analysis. New York, NY: McGrawHill Inc.
[49] Steele, J. M. (2004). The Cauchy-Schwartz Master Class. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.
[50] Stillwell, J. (2002). Mathematics and its history (2nd ed.). New York, NY: Springer.
[51] Strang, G. (1988). Linear Algebra and its Applications (3rd ed.). San Diego, CA: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich.
[52] Taylor, B. (1715). Methodus Incrementorum Directa et Inversa. London, England: Impensis Gulielmi Innys.
[53] Todhunter, I. (1886). Spherical Trigonometry: For the Use of Colleges and Schools. London, England: MacMillan \& Co.
[54] Ushijima, A. (2006). A volume formula for generalised hyperbolic tetrahedra. NonEuclidean Geometries: János Bolyai Memorial Volume, 249-265.
[55] Wildberger, N. J. (2006). Affine and projective universal geometry. Retrieved from https://arxiv.org/abs/math/0612499.
[56] Wildberger, N. J. (2015). An introduction to rational trigonometry and chromogeometry. $G$, 12(23), 45-61.
[57] Wildberger, N. J. (2010). Chromogeometry. The Mathematical Intelligencer, 32(1), 26-32.
[58] Wildberger, N. J. (2009). Chromogeometry and relativistic conics. KoG, 13, 43-50.
[59] Wildberger, N. J. (2005). Divine Proportions: Rational Trigonometry to Universal Geometry. Sydney, NSW: Wild Egg Books.
[60] Wildberger, N. J. (2018). Projective and spherical trigonometry. Retrieved from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/268286292_Projective_and_spherical_trigonometry.
[61] Wildberger, N. J. (2007). One dimensional metrical geometry. Geometriae Dedicata, 128(1), 145-166.
[62] Wildberger, N. J. (2017). Rational trigonometry in higher dimensions and a diagonal rule for 2-planes in four-dimensional space. $K o G, 21, ~ 47-54$.
[63] Wildberger, N. J. (2012). Three dimensional geometry, ZOME, and the elusive tetrahedron [Video file]. Retrieved from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rzUtdwh2rj0\&t=1s.
[64] Wildberger, N. J. (2013). Universal hyperbolic geometry I: trigonometry. Geometriae Dedicata, 163(1), 215-274.
[65] Wildberger, N. J. (2010). Universal hyperbolic geometry II: a pictorial overview. KoG, 14, 3-24.
[66] Wildberger, N. J. (2011). Universal hyperbolic geometry III: first steps in projective triangle geometry. $K o G, 15,25-49$.
[67] Wildberger, N. J. \& Alkhaldi, A. (2012). Universal hyperbolic geometry IV: sydpoints and twin circumcircles. $K o G, 16,43-62$.
[68] Wildberger, N. J. (2011). WildLinAlg: A geometric course in Linear Algebra [Video playlist]. Retrieved from https://www.youtube.com/playlist?list=PL01A21B9E302D50C1.


[^0]:    Declaration relating to disposition of project thesis/dissertation
    I hereby grant to the University of New South Wales or its agents the right to archive and to make available my thesis or dissertation in whole or in part in the University libraries in all forms of media, now or here after known, subject to the provisions of the Copyright Act 1968. I retain all property rights, such as patent rights. I also retain the right to use in future works (such as articles or books) all or part of this thesis or dissertation.

    I also authorise University Microfilms to use the 350 word abstract of my thesis in Dissertation Abstracts International (this is applicable to doctoral theses only).

    ## Signature

    Witness Signature
    Date
    The University recognises that there may be exceptional circumstances requiring restrictions on copying or conditions on use. Requests for restriction for a period of up to 2 years must be made in writing. Requests for a longer period of restriction may be considered in exceptional circumstances and require the approval of the Dean of Graduate Research.

[^1]:    FOR OFFICE USE ONLY Date of completion of requirements for Award:

